AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS





Lesson (1) LET'S REMEMBER

Body

skeleton	هيكل عظمي
blood	دم
heart	قلب
muscles	عضلات
stomach	معدة

Animals

mammals	ثدييات
reptiles	زواحف
birds	طيور
fish	أسماك
jellyfish	قنديل البحر

Transportation

cab	سيارة أجرة
ferry	معدية
subway	مترو
rocket	صاروخ
ship	سفينة

Technology

website	موقع على الإنترنت
blog	مدونة شخصية
vlog	مدونة فيديو
instant message	رسالة فورية
email	بريد إلكتروني

Food

beans	فول
garlic	ثوم
spices	توابل
herbs	أعشاب
bread	خبز

Clothes

button	زر
sleeve	كم
linen	كتان
jewelry	مجوهرات
shirt	قميص

Environments

coastal	ساحلية
desert	صحراوية
polar	قطبية
mountainous	جبلية

Environmental Problems

landslide	انهيار التربة
erosion	التعرية
flood	فيضان
tsunami	إعصار تسونامى

Study the following:

- Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- You shouldn't eat too many candies.
- Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
- Today we're talking about recycling.
- We often eat our meals with bread.

Lesson (2)

LET'S REMEMBER

Vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان أولية	presentation	عرض
secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية	congestion	ازدحام
vertebrates	فقاريات	creativity	إبداع
invertebrates	لا فقاريات	ice caps	قمم جليدية
tidal energy	طاقة المد والجزر	amphibians	برمائيات
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	lantern	فانوس
right hemisphere	النصف الأيمن (للمخ)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighborhood	الحي السكني / المنطقة	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
touch-type	يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح باللمس	blind	كفيف
metropolitan areas	المناطق الحضرية	deaf	أصم
densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	senet	لعبة السينيت
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	topic	موضوع

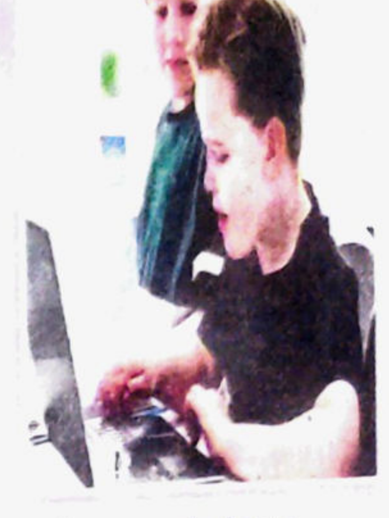
Read and learn

1. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
2. There are five types of vertebrates: mammals, reptiles, amphibians, fish, and birds.
3. Red, yellow, and blue are primary colors.
4. When you touch-type, you can type without looking at the keyboard.
5. Congestion can be a problem in big cities.
6. If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels will rise.
7. Senet is the world's oldest board game.
8. The sea is a good place to get tidal energy.

Help your child remember these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتذكر هذه الكلمات.

Let's remember

Listen and read.



Tarek : Hi Adam, what are you doing?

Adam : Hi Tarek. I'm doing my homework. We have to give a presentation about different types of communication.

Tarek : That sounds interesting! What type are you studying?

Adam : I like reading about lots of different topics, so I think blogs are interesting.

It's great that people can write about their ideas and share them online.

Tarek : I like vlogs. People make some great videos sometimes!

Adam : There are lots of different ways to communicate now. We can send messages more quickly than people could fifty years ago.

Tarek : Yes, it's much quicker and easier. When do you have to present your work?

Adam : On Tuesday, but I'm nervous. I don't like talking to lots of people.

Tarek : Don't worry, you're good at explaining things. I can help you practice. Remember to speak slowly, smile, and try to look confident!

Adam : Thank you, that's useful advice!

Steps of making a presentation about:

(Neighborhood)

First, we took some photos of the area we live in.

Then, we looked at the photos on our laptop.

Next, we chose the best photos from the laptop and printed them.

Finally, we made a class display of our work.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Past Simple Tense



Form The second form of the verb

Regular verbs

We add (d / ed / ied):

smile → smiled   cook → cooked   study → studied

Irregular verbs

The form changes:

be → was / were   do → did   have → had

Possessive

(Adjectives / Pronouns)

Subject pronouns	Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	his	+ noun	his	ملكه
She	her	+ noun	hers	ملكها
It	its	+ noun	-	
We	our	+ noun	ours	ملكنا
You	your	+ noun	yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	their	+ noun	theirs	ملكهم

Let's remember

Plural



Nouns can be singular or plural.

Rules for plural

1 Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers

sister → sisters

Nouns ending in (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es).

buffalo → buffaloes

dish → dishes

box → boxes

watch → watches

Nouns ending in (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies

city → cities

Nouns ending in (a vowel + y), we add (s).

donkey → donkeys

boy → boys

2 Irregular plural: The noun changes. (There is no rule.)

man → men

goose → geese

person → people

woman → women

child → children

foot → feet

Some nouns don't change.

sheep → sheep

fish → fish

deer → deer

Help your child revise plural forms.

ساعد طفلك ان يراجع اشكال الجمع.

Punctuation Marks



Capital letters

1. At the beginning of the sentence
2. Names of people, countries, cities, months and days of the week

Wael lives in Alexandria in Egypt.



Full stop / Period

- At the end of the sentence

I love my school.



Question mark

- At the end of the question

Do you like cooking, Mona?



Comma

- To divide items in a sentence

I play football, tennis, and basketball.



Exclamation mark

- To show strong feelings or emotions

You are doing a great job!

Help your child use Punctuation Marks.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم علامات الترقيم.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

vlogs - blogs - presentation - homework

Tarek : What are you doing?

Adam : I'm doing my 1) .... We have to give a 2) .... about different types of communication.

Tarek : What type are you studying?

Adam : I like reading about lots of different topics, so I think 3) .... are interesting.

Tarek : I like 4) .... People make some great videos sometimes!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yesterday, we .... a French lesson.
   a) has b) had c) having d) have
2. Last Sunday, I .... a presentation about reptiles.
   a) makes b) made c) making d) make
3. I like .... People make some great videos sometimes!
   a) blogs b) vlogs c) poems d) books
4. "Men" is the plural form of ....
   a) woman b) man c) child d) person
5. Cairo is the .... city in Egypt.
   a) large b) larger c) largest d) more large
6. .... are cold-blooded.
   a) Reptiles b) Mammals c) Birds d) Cows.
7. A jellyfish is a/an ....
   a) invertebrate b) amphibian c) vertebrate d) bird
8. People who are .... can't hear well.
   a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) lame
9. Red and blue are .... colors.
   a) secondary b) primary c) first d) second

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

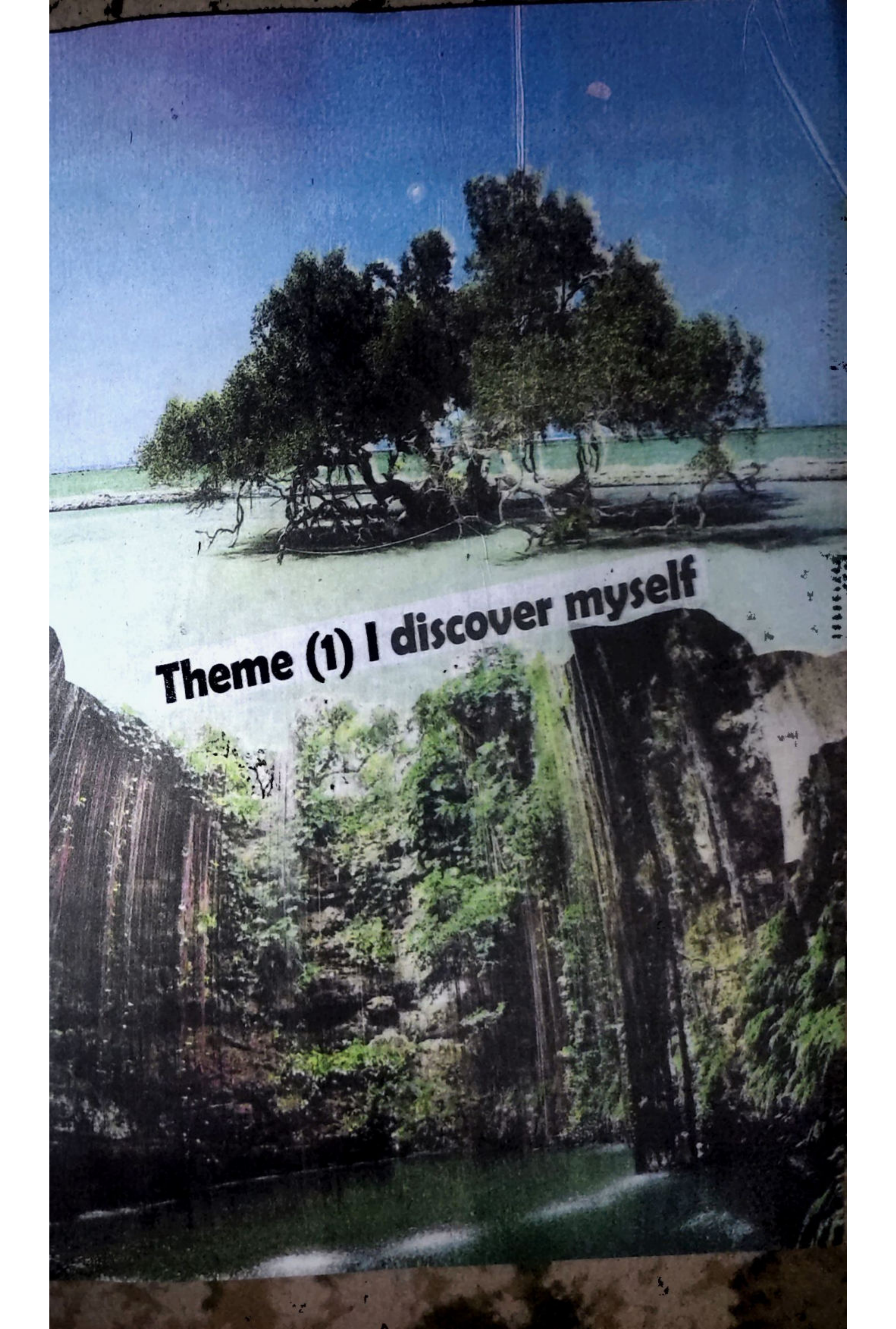
1. largest - in - the - Egypt - city - is - .
2. solar energy - will - Airplanes - future - the - in - use - .
3. talking - recycling - about - today - .
4. eat - our - often - bread - with - meals - .
5. the moment - doing - are - What - you - at - ?

4 Complete the table.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
baby		tomato	
sheep			geese
	children		cities
man		woman	

5 Punctuate the following.

1. the store sells clothes jewelry and bags
2. do fares and yasmine live in luxor
3. will you stay in amman when you visit jordan


Theme (1) I discover myself

Unit 1 Life in my world



Wadi el Gemal National Park

In this unit, the students will ...

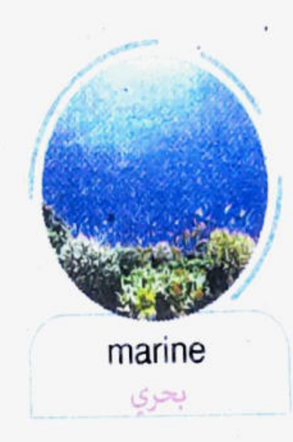
- understand a story about a visit to a marine ecosystem.
- understand and use relative clauses.
- read and understand a story about a mangrove ecosystem.
- listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer.
- understand and use abstract nouns.
- use linking words to write about how to stay healthy.
- read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem.
- revise and use will, can, might, must, can't for predictions, offers, possibility, and obligation.

Lesson (1) A GREAT TRIP!

Listen and say.















Help your child identify different ecosystems.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأنظمة البيئية المختلفة.

Extra vocabulary

storm	عاصفة	trip	رحلة
area	منطقة	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
thick	سميك	shallow	ضحل (غيرعميق)
salt water	مياه مالحة	illnesses	أمراض
diseases	أمراض	community	مجتمع
butterflies	فراشات	mangrove forests	غابات المانجروف
species	أنواع / فصائل	soil	تربة
roots	جذور	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون

Important expressions and prepositions

along the coast	بامتداد الساحل	interact with	يتفاعل مع
grow out of ...	ينمو من ...	high out of	أعلى من ....
safe home for	موطن آمن لـ	species of	أنواع من ....
living things	كائنات حية	Nabq National Park	حديقة نبق الوطنية
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
interact	يتفاعل	interacted	interacted
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
fight	يقاتل / يحارب / يتشاجر	fought	fought
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

Our school trip to Nabq National Park by Heba Osman

رحلتنا المدرسية إلى حديقة نبق الوطنية (هبة عثمان)

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.

نبق هي حديقة وطنية كبيرة جدا في جنوب سيناء. على طول الساحل هنا ، هناك ٤,٨ كيلومتر من غابات المنجروف ، وهي الأكبر في البحر الأحمر. ذهبنا إلى هناك لمعرفة سبب أهمية غابات المنجروف بالنسبة للنظام البيئي البحري.

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

عندما وصلنا إلى الشاطئ ، رأينا الأشجار تنمو من البحر! لا يمكن أن تنمو معظم الأشجار في المياه المالحة، لكن أشجار المنجروف يمكنها ذلك. حيث لديها جذور مذهلة والتي تنمو عاليا في الماء. تساعدهم هذه الجذور في الحصول على الأكسجين. عندما لمست أوراق الأشجار ، بدت سميكة جدا. تمنع هذه الأوراق الخاصة النباتات من فقدان الماء عندما يكون الجو حارا جدا.



We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem.

علمنا أن أشجار المنجروف تساعد البيئة بطرق عديدة. فأشجار المنجروف تحمي الكائنات غير الحية والكائنات الحية في النظام البيئي البحري.

When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

عندما تكون هناك عواصف ، فإن جذورها العميقة تمنع الرمال من الانجراف. الغابات هي أيضا موطن آمن للعديد من الحيوانات.

Help your child read about a visit to a marine ecosystem. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن زيارة إلى نظام بيئي بحري.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive.

تعيش مئات الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والحشرات والحيوانات الأخرى في غابات المنجروف. يمكننا أن نرى العديد من الأسماك الصغيرة تسبح في المياه الضحلة بين جذور الأشجار ، حيث لا تستطيع الأسماك الكبيرة والحيوانات الأخرى صيدها. هذه هي الطريقة التي تساعد بها أشجار المنجروف الأسماك الصغيرة على البقاء.

The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

تأخذ أوراق أشجار المنجروف أربعة أضعاف ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الهواء من أنواع أخرى من الأشجار. تساعدنا أشجار المنجروف في حالة الاحتباس الحرارى.



We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers. People say mangrove honey helps fight some illnesses and diseases.

رأينا أيضا الزهور الصفراء الصغيرة على أشجار المنجروف. كان هناك الكثير من النحل و الحشرات الأخرى عليها. يصنع النحل عسلًا خاصًا من أزهار المنجروف. يقول الناس يساعد عسل المنجروف في محاربة بعض الأمراض و الأسقام.

What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species making a community. The plants, animals, and insects all interact with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of butterflies! It was a great day.

اكثر ما أعجبني في أشجار المنجروف هو رؤية كل الأنواع المختلفة التي تكوّن مجتمع. تتفاعل النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات مع بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة. لم أر قط الكثير من الأنواع المختلفة من الفراشات مثل الذى رأيتها ! لقد كان يوما رائعا.

Help your child read about a visit to a marine ecosystem. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن زيارة إلى نظام بيئي بحري.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nabq National Park is in South ....

a) London b) Sinai c) Alexandria d) Port Said

2. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometres of .... forest.

a) orange b) apple c) mango d) mangrove

3. Mangrove forests are so important for the .... ecosystem.

a) marine b) freshwater c) desert d) forest

4. Mangrove trees can grow in .... water.

a) salt b) cold c) fresh d) hot

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

water - marine - fish - trip - Sinai

Ali : Hi Sara. Where did you go yesterday?

Sara : I went on a school 1) .... to Nabq National Park.

Ali : Where is Nabq National Park?

Sara : It is in South 2) ....

Ali : Why did you go there?

Sara : To learn why mangrove forests are so important for the 3) .... ecosystem.

Ali : What are some of the living things in a marine ecosystem?

Sara : Hundreds of different kinds of 4) .... , birds, insects and other animals.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The mangrove forest is the .... in the Red Sea
   a) smallest b) tallest c) shortest d) largest
2. Mangrove trees are so .... for the marine ecosystem
   a) bad b) awful c) important d) helpless
3. Mangrove leaves are very ....
   a) thin b) thick c) slim d) fat
4. Mangrove trees help young fish to ....
   a) eat b) survive c) swim d) sleep
5. Bees make a special .... from the mangrove flowers
   a) sugar b) sugarcane c) honey d) milk
6. In an ecosystem, living things .... with non-living things
   a) go b) watch c) interact d) run
7. Animals and plants are .... things
   a) living b) non-living c) lively d) lives
8. Mangrove trees are special because they can grow in .... water
   a) fresh b) salt c) muddy d) cold
9. Mangrove forests .... the marine ecosystem
   a) kill b) protect c) damage d) destroy
10. The leaves of mangrove trees take more .... from the air than other trees.
    a) carbon dioxide b) oxygen c) nitrogen d) water
11. Mangrove honey helps fight some .... and diseases
    a) people b) illnesses c) plants d) medicines
12. The plants, animals, and insects .... with each other to survive
    a) interact b) protect c) damage d) save

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. trees - survive - Mangrove - fish - young - help - .

 ....

2. plants - the animals - An ecosystem - an area - in - is - and - all

 ....

3. thick - leaves - are - Mangrove - very - .

 ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is a/an ....
   a) ecosystem b) lake c) sea d) river
2. Living things are things such as plants and ....
   a) rocks b) soil c) water d) animals
3. The underlined word "big" is the opposite of ....
   a) huge b) large c) small d) heavy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is an ecosystem? ....
5. Why do the different species in an ecosystem need each other?

 ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The mangrove forests

Guiding elements:

(important - marine ecosystem - salt water - roots - thick)

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Relative Clauses جمل الوصل

Usage

To describe a noun. تستخدم لوصف اسم.

who - which - where

who الذي / التي (للعاقل)

- **We use "who" for people.**

e.g. I have a friend who lives in the Sinai Peninsula.

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

- **We use "which" for things.**

e.g. Malak has a book which is about plants in the Sinai Peninsula.

where حيث (للمكان)

- **We use "where" for places.**

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

لاحظ:

الفرق بين (اسم المكان والاسم الغير عاقل)

اسم المكان: يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان.

لكن الاسم الغير عاقل: لا يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان.

This is the shop where I buy my needs. هنا (الشراء) نشاط نقوم به داخل المحل.

This is the shop which opens very early. هنا (فتح المحل) ليس نشاط نقوم به داخل المحل.

Help your child understand and use relative clauses. ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويستخدم جمل الوصل.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Do you remember my cousin Ali .... lives in the Sinai Peninsula?
   a) where   b) which   c) what   d) who
2. We learned a lot about the area .... they live.
   a) whose   b) who   c) where   d) which
3. They live close to a mountain .... is called Mount Sinai.
   a) who   b) which   c) where   d) when
4. I have another cousin .... lives near a wadi.
   a) what   b) which   c) where   d) who
5. A wadi is an ecosystem .... is normally dry.
   a) where   b) who   c) which   d) whose
6. We met a man .... works in a garden.
   a) who   b) whose   c) which   d) where
7. I have a friend .... lives in Alexandria.
   a) which   b) where   c) who   d) when
8. Cairo is the city .... my uncle lives.
   a) which   b) when   c) who   d) where
9. Mona always gives us figs .... are from her garden.
   a) whose   b) who   c) which   d) where
10. These are the boys .... are very good at science.
    a) which   b) where   c) who   d) when
11. This is the store .... you can buy some sweet oranges.
    a) where   b) who   c) which   d) whose
12. This is a medicinal plant .... is good for tired people.
    a) which   b) where   c) who   d) what

13. Do you know my aunt .... lives in New York?
 a) which b) where c) who d) whose
14. I know a nice place .... we can go for a holiday.
 a) where b) which c) when d) who
15. Younis is a boy .... wants to be a scientist.
 a) which b) who c) where d) whose
16. Malak has a book .... is about medicinal plants in the Sinai Peninsula.
 a) who b) where c) which d) when
17. Do you know the house .... my grandparents live?
 a) that b) who c) where d) which
18. I have a friend .... is very good at tennis.
 a) who b) which c) when d) where
19. This is the house .... I was born.
 a) when b) where c) who d) which
20. I have a sister .... is very kind.
 a) which b) who c) where d) when

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. This is my friend .... (which) I love.
2. We met a boy .... (where) lives in Cairo.
3. This is the mountain .... (who) is called Mount Sinai.
4. I have a son .... (which) is very good at swimming.
5. She has a book .... (where) is about marine ecosystem.
6. This is the mall .... (who) you can buy many things.
7. Sara is the girl .... (which) wants to be a doctor.
8. This is the shop .... (where) opens very early.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

A RAINFOREST ECOSYSTEM

Key vocabulary



Amazon rainforest canopy

مظلة غابات الأمازون المطيرة



wildlife

الحياة البرية



a custard apple

فاكهة الكاسترد (سفرجل هندى)



photographer

مصور فوتوغرافى



exhibition

معرض

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown



Main Points

1. Malak Habib has been to the Amazon rainforest.

زارت ملك حبيب غابات الأمازون المطيرة.

2. The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.

تُعد غابات الأمازون المطيرة نظامًا بيئيًا هامًا جدًا.

3. All the living things in the rainforest need each other.

تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية في الغابة المطيرة إلى بعضها البعض.

4. Custard apple trees are important to the rainforest ecosystem because animals eat the fruit to survive.

فاكهة الكاسترد الهندية مهمة للنظام البيئي لأن الحيوانات تأكل الفاكهة لتظل على قيد الحياة.

5. Birds and animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest.

تنقل الطيور والحيوانات بذور الأشجار إلى أجزاء أخرى من الغابة.

6. All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

تتفاعل جميع أجزاء النظام البيئي للغابات مع بعضها البعض.

7. People are cutting down the trees, so animals will lose their homes and food.

يقوم الناس بقطع الأشجار، لذلك سوف تفقد الحيوانات مواطنها وطعامها.

Help your child learn about the Amazon rainforest.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن غابة الأمازون المطيرة.

Parts of speech

Noun

a word that is the name of a person, place, thing or idea.

Ahmed - Egypt - cat - goal - luck

Adjective

a word that describes a noun.

happy - funny - beautiful - lucky

Adjective	الصفة	Abstract noun	اسم معنوي
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح

Study the following:

- I wanted to show people the beauty of the Amazon rainforest.
- You need to have a lot of patience.
- Luck is also quite important.
- He doesn't want to wait because he isn't a patient person.
- They weren't lucky that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
- Malak's exhibition was a great success.

Help your child identify nouns and adjectives.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأسماء والصفات.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Amazon rainforest is a very important ....
   a) system b) ecosystem c) style d) rain
2. All the .... things in the rainforest need each other.
   a) life b) living c) leave d) non-living
3. Custard apple trees help many animals ....
   a) die b) sleep c) survive d) grow
4. The animals take the trees .... to other parts of the forest.
   a) leaves b) stems c) seeds d) oil

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

photographer - do - Custard apple - ecosystem- play

Student : Hello, can I ask you a few questions?

Malak : Yes, of course.

Student : What do you 1) ....?

Malak : I'm a wildlife 2) .... I like to take photos of the forests.

Student : What's the rainforest?

Malak : It is a very important 3) ....

Student : What are the most important trees there?

Malak : 4) .... trees.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares doesn't want to wait because he isn't a .... person.
   a) patience b) patient c) success d) beauty
2. People are cutting .... the trees.
   a) in b) on c) down d) at

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. There is so much .... in the Amazon rainforest.
   a) beauty   b) beautiful   c) success   d) successful
4. My grandad doesn't have the .... to learn about computers.
   a) patience   b) patient   c) beauty   d) beautiful
5. Malak's exhibition was a great ....
   a) successful   b) success   c) lucky   d) beautiful
6. They weren't .... that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
   a) luck   b) lucky   c) beauty   d) success
7. I wanted to show people the .... of the Amazon rainforest.
   a) success   b) beauty   c) luck   d) patience
8. You need to have a lot of ....
   a) patience   b) successful   c) lucky   d) patient
9. The Amazon rainforest is a very important ....
   a) ecosystem   b) river   c) desert   d) system
10. The animals take the trees .... to other parts of the forest.
   a) stems   b) leaves   c) roots   d) seeds

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. cut down - People - the rainforest - trees - in - .

   ....

2. important - very - The Amazon rainforest - a - is - ecosystem .

   ....

3. is - Luck - important - also - quite - .

   ....

4. a - is - success - exhibition - Your - great - .

   ....

5. to - You - have - need - patience - a lot of - .

   ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Malak is a wildlife photographer. She has been to the Amazon rainforest. She wanted to learn more about the Amazon rainforst, because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.

The Amazon rainforst is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. Malak wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Malak is a wildlife ....
   a) engineer b) photographer c) researcher d) teacher
2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ....
   a) Malak b) Malek c) Sara d) Mona
3. The main idea of the text is the Amazon ....
   a) River b) rainforest c) company d) animals

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did Malak want to learn more about the Amazon rainforest? ....
5. What did Malak want to show people? ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Amazon rainforest

Guiding elements:

(important - ecosystem - living things - Custard apple trees - trees seeds - interact)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

STORY: IN THE MANGROVE TREE

Listen and repeat.


dugong
الأطوم (حيوان ثديي مائي)


kingfisher
طائر الرفراف


pollen
حبوب اللقاح


worm
دودة

Definitions

worried	You feel unhappy because you're thinking about problems or things that could happen. قلق
surprised	Something happens and you didn't think it would happen. مندهش
confused	You find it difficult to understand something. مشوش / متحير

Conjugation of verbs

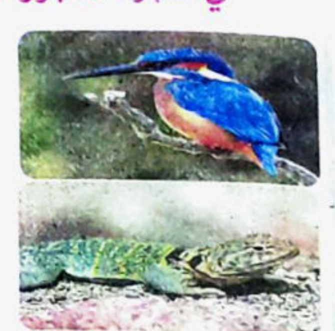
Present		Past	P.P
fly	يطير	flew	flown
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
come out	يخرج من	came out	come out
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read and listen to the story.

In the mangrove tree

في شجرة المنجروف



A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard. "You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"

كان طائر الرفراف يزور صديقته القديمة، السحلية، في شجرة المنجروف. طار إلى أسفل وجلس بجانب السحلية. وقال طائر الرفراف للسحلية "أنتِ تبدين حزينة" . وسألها "ما الأمر؟".



"People came and cut down some trees. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult to find food." "Oh no!" said the kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry." Suddenly, a dugong came up out of the sea.

قالت السحلية "جاء الناس و قطعوا بعض الأشجار. الأشجار تحمى الديدان والأسماك التي نأكلها ، ولكن الآن من الصعب العثور على الطعام." قال طائر الرفراف "أوه لا!" ، وكان يبدو قلقا. "أنا جائع." فجأة ، خرج حيوان الأطوم من البحر.

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised. "Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news," said the dugong."What is it? Are the people back again?" asked the kingfisher."Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong.

قالت السحلية باندهاش "مرحبا، أيها الأطوم!" قال حيوان الأطوم "مرحبا أيتها السحلية. مرحبا طائر الرفراف. لدي بعض الأخبار السيئة"، سأله طائر الرفراف "ما هي هذه الأخبار؟ هل عاد الناس مرة أخرى؟" قال الأطوم "نعم، ألا يمكنك أن تسمعهم؟" .

The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully. They heard trucks and people shouting. "Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

استمعت كلًا من السحلية والرفراف بعناية. سمعوا الشاحنات والناس يصرخون. بكت السحلية قائلة "أوه لا. كم عدد أشجار المنجروف التي سيقومون بقطعها؟".

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.



At that moment, the animals heard a buzzing sound. There were three bees buzzing around the tree. One of the bees flew close to the other animals and said,"The people are not going to cut down more trees.

في تلك اللحظة ، سمعت الحيوانات صوت طنين. كان هناك ثلاثة نحلات تَطِنّ حول الشجرة. طارت إحدى النحلات بالقرب من الحيوانات الأخرى وقالت: "لن يقطع الناس المزيد من الأشجار.

They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a mistake. They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."

سوف يزرعون أشجار المنجروف الأخرى. إنهم يفهمون أنهم ارتكبوا خطأ. لقد تعلموا أن أشجار المنجروف مهمة ، لذا فهم يزرعون أشجارًا جديدة. لقد أحضرونا إلى هنا لمساعدة الأشجار على النمو."

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong,confused. "We carry pollen from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds," explained the bee.

سأل الأطوم في حيرة "كيف ستساعدون الأشجار على النمو؟"، أوضحت النحلة قائلة "نحمل حبوب اللقاح من نبات أو شجرة إلى أخرى وهذا يساعدهم على صنع البذور".

"So, is life going to get better here?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling. "Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're hungry!"

سأل طائر الرفراف "إذا، هل ستسير الحياة بشكل أفضل هنا؟". أجابت النحلة مبتسمة "نعم، ستكون جيدة!" قال السحلية وطائر الرفراف معا. "نحن جائعان!"

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... was visiting her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree.
   a) dugong b) worm c) kingfisher d) pollen
2. The lizard looked ....
   a) sad b) happy c) ugly d) exited
3. People came and .... some trees.
   a) planted b) watered c) grew d) cut down
4. It's difficult for the kingfisher and the .... to find food.
   a) lizard b) crow c) snake d) dugong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The trees .... the animals food.
   a) damage b) protect c) destroy d) kill
2. The animals can't find enough .... to eat.
   a) trees b) food c) water d) juice
3. " .... " is to feel unhappy.
   a) Worried b) Surprised c) Hungry d) Funny
4. " ...... " means something happens and you didn't think it would happen.
   a) Bored b) Surprised c) Thirsty d) Hungry
5. People came and .... some trees.
   a) turned on b) cut down c) turned off d) flew
6. The kingfisher looked ....
   a) worry b) worries c) worried d) worrying
7. There were three .... buzzing.
   a) birds b) animals c) worms d) bees

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. Dugong told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the people were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were worried. Then they heard some bees buzzing around the tree. A bee told the animals what was happening. The people learned that the trees were important, and that they were part of the ecosystem.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The lizard was ....

   a) happy b) excited c) sad d) surprised

2. The animals could .... trucks and people shouting.

   a) listen b) watch c) see d) hear

3. The underlined word "She" refers to the ....

   a) kingfisher b) lizard c) dugong d) bee

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the lizard live? ....

5. Why was it difficult for the lizard to find food? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. says - The dugong - that - are - the people - back - .

   ....

2. you - the trees - How - help - will - grow - ?

   ....

3. came - down - trees - some - People - and - cut - .

   ....

4. part - Mangrove - are - trees - the ecosystem - of - .

   ....

Lesson (5) I HAVE A HEALTHY HEART

Key vocabulary

heart	قلب	blood	م
arteries	شرايين	circulatory system	جهاز الدوري
veins	أوردة	carbon dioxide	ن أكسيد الكربون



Extra vocabulary

oxygen	أكسجين	new born	يث الولادة
air	هواء	adult	ص بالغ (راشد)
humans	البشر	healthy	ي
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	regularly	ظام
minerals	معادن	nutrients	صر غذائية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
exercise	يتمرن	exercised	exercised
relax	يستريح	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
beat	ينبض	beat	beaten
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

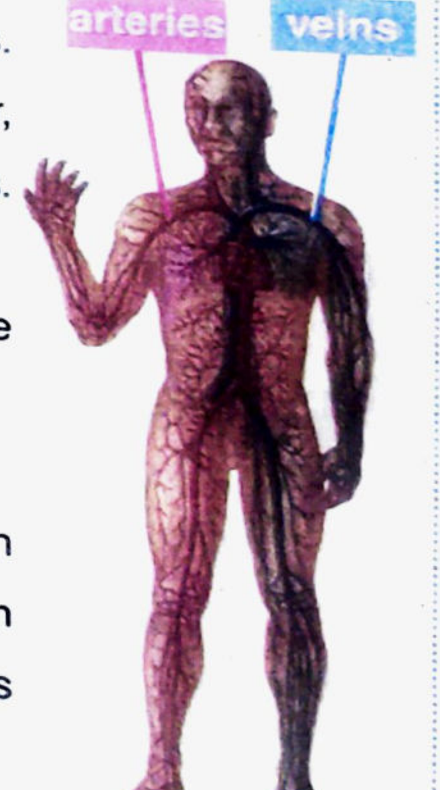
Important expressions and prepositions

similar to	مشابه لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى
think about	يفكر في	good for	مفيد لـ
instead of	بدلًا من	protect from	يحمى من
get sick	يمرض (يصاب بمرض)	How often...?	كم مرة....؟
about 100.000 times	حوالى ١٠٠,٠٠٠ مرة	work harder	يعمل بجهد اكبر

Look and read.

Are plants similar to humans?

هل النباتات تشبه البشر؟



In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

في بعض النواحي، يشبه البشر النباتات. فكر في نظام الدورة الدموية لدينا. بدلا من الماء ، لدينا الأوردة والشرايين التي تحمل الدم في أنحاء أجسادنا. تنقل الشرايين الدم بعيدا من قلوبنا. تحمل الأوردة الدم إليه. المواد الغذائية والأكسجين الذى نحتاجه موجود في دمائنا. لكننا لا نستخدم ثاني أكسيد الكربون كما تفعل النباتات. يحتاج البشر إلى ضوء الشمس، أيضًا لا يمكننا صنع طعامنا ، لكننا نحصل على فيتامين د من أشعة الشمس. هذا يمكن أن يساعد في حمايتنا من المرض. يجعل ضوء الشمس الكثير من بالسعادة!

Help your child read about his / her body

Read and learn.



Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

قلبك يدق أكثر من 100 ألف مرة في اليوم! لذلك من المهم الحفاظ على صحة قلبك.عندما تمشي أو تجري وتسبح أو تركب الدراجة فهذا يجعل القلب يعمل بجهد أكثر. إذا تدربت بأنتظام فهذا يجعل قلبك يعمل بشكل أفضل حيث يمكنك الحصول على المعادن والعناصر الغذائية والاكسجين بطريقة أكثر سهولة.

Read this information about the heart

1. Your heart beats about 70 times a minute.

   ينبض قلبك حوالي 70 مرة في الدقيقة.

2. The heart moves blood around your body.

   يحرك القلب الدم حول جسمك.



3. A new born baby's heart beats faster than adults' heart.

   قلب المولود الجديد ينبض أسرع من قلب البالغين.

4. Veins carry blood to the heart.

   الأوردة تحمل الدم إلى القلب.

HOW TO KEEP YOUR HEART HEALTHY

1. Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish.
2. Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside.
3. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike.
4. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Help your child read about his / her heart.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن قلبه.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and ....
   a) pasta   b) burger   c) cake   d) fish
2. Play .... with your friends.
   a) sports   b) cards   c) chess   d) games
3. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your ....
   a) horse   b) donkey   c) bike   d) scooter
4. Take some time to .... and be quiet.
   a) fix   b) relax   c) sleep   d) run

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

exercise - oxygen - beats - heart - nose

Your heart 1) .... over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your 2) .... work harder. If you 3) .... regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and 4) .... you need more easily.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Blood travels around our bodies in our ....
   a) veins and arteries   b) muscles   c) bones   d) tendons
2. .... move blood away from our heart.
   a) Bones   b) Ligaments   c) Veins   d) Arteries
3. .... carry blood to our heart.
   a) Veins   b) Fingers   c) Arteries   d) Toes
4. Blood carries .... around our bodies.
   a) oxygen and nutrients   b) carbon dioxide   c) nitrogen   d) hydrogen
5. We can get vitamin D from ....
   a) water   b) sunlight   c) soil   d) moon

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our arteries carry .... away from our heart.
   a) food b) water c) blood d) oxygen
2. We get vitamin D from ....
   a) plant b) soil c) sunlight d) water
3. The underlined word "sick" means ....
   a) healthy b) ill c) fine d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of text? ....
5. How does blood move to your heart? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. play - I - with - sports - my friends - .

....

2. a minute - about - Your - beats - 70 times - heart - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep your heart healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy food - sports - exercise - relax)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING: LINKING WORDS

Read the following text.



Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book.

سليم ولد بصحة جيدة. يحب الرياضة. يلعب التنس وكرة القدم وكرة السلة. يأكل طعاما صحيا مثل الفاكهة والخضروات والأرز. لا يأكل الكثير من الشوكولاتة لأنه يعلم أن هذا الطعام ليس صحيا جدا. في المساء ، يريد الاسترخاء ، لذلك يقرأ كتابا.

"I do a lot of exercise because it's good for me," says Seleem. "Your heart is very important so you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is right. It's important to do exercise.

يقول سليم:" أقوم بالكثير من التمارين لأنها جيدة بالنسبة لي". "قلبك مهم جدا لذا عليك أن تحافظ عليه بصحة جيدة."سليم على حق. فمن المهم ممارسة التدريبات الرياضية.

He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

لديه عائلة تتمتع بصحة أيضا. أخته أميرة تلعب التنس وشقيقته دينا تلعب كرة القدم. تمشي والدته إلى العمل ويركب والده دراجته ، لكنهم لا يمارسون الرياضة. تحب أخواته الاستماع إلى الموسيقى للاسترخاء. من المهم أن تسترخي قلوبنا أيضا.

Help your child read about how to stay healthy.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن كيفية البقاء بصحة جيدة.

Linking words أدوات الربط

Linking words are words that join words or sentences together.

هي أدوات لربط كلمات أو جمل ببعضها.

and و

- To link different things in a list — لربط أشياء مختلفة في قائمة

Fish, chicken, and beans are all healthy food.

- To link two similar sentences — لربط جملتين متشابهتين

We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.



but لكن

- To show a contrast — لبيان التناقض

He is weak, but works for 8 hours a day.

- To link a positive and a negative sentence — لربط جملة مثبتة وجملة منفية

He is rich, but he doesn't help the poor.

because لأن

- To show a reason for something — لبيان السبب

Nadine goes to the pool because she likes swimming.

so لذلك

- To show the result of something — لبيان النتيجة

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

Help your child identify and use linking words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أدوات الربط ويستخدمها.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

volleyball - and - sports center - Fridays - but

Ali : Hello, Seleem. Where are you going?

Seleem : I'm going to the 1) .... because it's basketball club today.

Ali : Is there a 2) .... club at the sports center?

Seleem : Yes. It's on 3) ....

Ali : Is there a tennis club?

Seleem : No, there isn't. I play volleyball 4) .... football.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nadine goes to the pool .... she likes swimming.
   a) because b) so c) but d) and
2. Maggie doesn't like feeling tired in the morning, ... she goes to bed early.
   a) but b) and c) because d) so
3. Last weekend we went to the beach .... we swam in the sea.
   a) and b) so c) but d) because
4. Hany likes to play basketball, ... he doesn't like to play football.
   a) so b) because c) and d) but
5. Fish, chicken, ... beans are all healthy food.
   a) and b) but c) because d) so
6. Wael likes fish, ... he doesn't like lamb.
   a) because b) so c) but d) and
7. Talia eats dates, pomegranates, ... figs.
   a) so b) because c) and d) but
8. I went to the library .... I needed a book.
   a) but b) and c) because d) so

9. Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, ... she does exercise.
   a) because   b) so   c) and   d) but
10. Walid and Shady went to the park .... they played tennis.
   a) so   b) but   c) because   d) and
11. I'm going to the sports center .... it's basketball club today.
   a) because   b) and   c) so   d) but
12. I don't play basketball, ... I play volleyball.
   a) and   b) but   c) because   d) so
13. Lara plays tennis .... she wants to be healthy.
   a) but   b) so   c) and   d) because

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. Tarek plays football .... (and) he doesn't play basketball.
2. We eat a lot of fruit .... (so) it is healthy.
3. Naglaa goes to the sports center .... (and) she doesn't go to the gym.
4. We eat fish .... (but) we eat fresh vegetables, too.
5. I want to be healthy .... (because) I don't eat candy and cakes.

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy - sports - exercise - fruit - vegetables - tennis)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY: WAITING FOR THE RAIN

Vocabulary

rain	مطر	cub	شبل	sunshine	اشعة الشمس
lovely	جميل	warm	دافئ	hard	صلب / قا
hunger	جوع	dead	ميت	happily	بسعادة

Important expressions and prepositions

hot day	يوم حار	rain falling	يتساقط المطر
lay in	يستلقى في (يتمدد في)	start to	يبدأ أن
move to	ينتقل إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
run away	يجرى بعيدًا	move through	يتحرك (خلال / عبر)

Modal verbs

will — For prediction — للتنبؤ

We will be hungry.

can — For request and permission — للطلب والاستئذان

Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

might — For possibilities — للإحتمالات

Some rabbits might be dead.

can't — For impossibility and disability — للإستحالة وعدم القدرة

Without rain, the grass can't grow.

must — For obligation — للإلزام

We must wait for rain.

Help your child identify these meanings.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه المعاني.

Listen to and read the story

Waiting for the rain في انتظار المطر



It was another long, hot day in the grassland.
Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine.
But his mother lcoked worried.

كان يوما آخر طويلًا وحارًا في الأراضي العشبية. كان الشبل مع أمه ، وكان يرقد في ضوء الشمس. لكن والدته بدت قلقة.

"I hope it rains soon," she said. "Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub. "It's lovely and warm. Wecan play in the sunshine." "If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then wewill be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh. "What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!"

قالت:" آمل أن تمطر قريبا". سأل الشبل"لماذا تريدين أن تمطر؟". "إنه يوم جميل ودافئ. يمكننا اللعب تحت
أشعة الشمس. أجابت الأم"إذا لم تمطر، فلن ينمو العشب. ثم سنكون جائعين" . بدأ الشبل يضحك. "ماذا
تقصدي؟ نحن نأكل اللحم وليس العشب!"

He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at
the sky and worried. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard.
There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling
in his stomach: **hunger**. "Can we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother.
"Ican't find any rabbits," she said sadly.

جرى الشبل بعيدًا للعب مع إخوته وأخواته، لكن والدته نظرت إلى السماء وقلقت. بعد أسبوعين ، كان الجو لا
يزال حارًا، وكانت الأرض صلبة. لم يكن هناك مطر، وكانت النباتات بنية. الآن، كان لدى الشبل شعور غريب في
معدته: إنه الجوع. سأل والدته "هل يمكننا اصطياد أرنب لتناول الطعام؟" قالت بحزن" لا يمكنني العثور على
أي أرانب".

"Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbitsmight be dead."
"Why?" asked Cub. "Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grasscan't
grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food." "Then we
don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood.

"ذهبت بعض الأرانب إلى أماكن أخرى. قد تكون بعض الأرانب ميتة." سأل الشبل"لماذا؟". "لأنه لا يوجد أي
مطر. بدون المطر، لا يمكن للعشب أن ينمو. إذا لم ينمو العشب، فلن يكون للأرانب أي طعام. أجاب الشبل"إذا
ليس لدينا أي طعام!". الآن فهم الشبل.

Help your child listen to and read the story.

Lesson (7)

"What can we do?" "We must wait for rain. If it doesn't rain, we must move to a different place." "So let's go! We can't stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now.

"ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟". "يجب أن ننتظر المطر. إذا لم تمطر ، يجب أن ننتقل إلى مكان مختلف." قال الشبل الذي كان قلقا للغاية الآن."لذلك هيا نرحل! لا يمكننا البقاء هنا بدون طعام!".

His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky. "Let's wait one more day," she said. Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground.

كانت والدته تشم رائحة الهواء. رأت سحابة رمادية رقيقة تبدأ في التحرك عبر السماء الزرقاء. قالت:" دعونا ننتظر يوما آخر". ذهب الشبل إلى الفراش جائعا ، ولكن في الصباح ، استيقظ لسماع المطر يسقط على الأرض.

He ran outside with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled. "Do you like the rain now, Cub?" she asked. "Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.

ركض في الخارج مع إخوته وأخواته، ولعبوا في الماء البارد. ابتسمت الأم وقالت. "هل تحب المطر الآن, أيها الشبل؟" قال الشبل بسعادة. "نعم! الآن العشب سوف ينمو، والأرانب ستعود، لن نجوع بعد الآن!



Help your child listen to and read the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. It was another long .... day in the grassland
   a) cool b) cold c) hot d) sunny
2. .... was with his mother
   a) Lion b) Cub c) Cap d) Cup
3. Cub lay in the ....
   a) road b) street c) house d) sunshine
4. The mother lion looked ....
   a) worried b) happy c) sad d) funny

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't ....
   a) grow b) sleep c) eat d) run
2. It's hot and there isn't any ....
   a) desert b) air c) rain d) flowers
3. He is .... He wants something to eat
   a) thirsty b) hungry c) hot d) cold
4. She heard the rain ....
   a) swimming b) running c) turning d) falling
5. There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits .... be hungry
   a) will b) can c) can't d) might
6. When it doesn't rain, the grass .... grow
   a) might b) won't c) can d) wouldn't
7. There are clouds in the sky. It .... rain soon
   a) must b) should c) will d) shouldn't
8. Cub .... sleep because he's hungry
   a) can b) will c) can't d) isn't
9. .... we catch a rabbit to eat
   a) Are b) Can c) Have d) Has

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried because there wasn't rain. She hoped it would rain soon. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food. But it rained and Cub was happy again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It was hot in the ....
   a) grassland b) club c) hotel d) tent
2. .... lion hoped it would rain soon
   a) Father b) Sister c) Brother d) Mother
3. The underlined word "he" refers to ....
   a) mother b) cub c) rabbit d) sky

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How did Mother feel at the start of the story? ....
5. What will happen if it doesn't rain? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. be - We - hungry - will - very - .
....
2. must - wait - They - rain - for - .
....
3. we - catch - Can - to eat - a rabbit - ?
....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Grassland ecosystem

Guiding elements:

(hot - live - animals - rain - grass - food)

Writing Corner

Ecosystem

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.
In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

A healthy heart

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

How to stay healthy

Health is very important. I love sports. I play tennis, football, and basketball. I eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. I don't eat a lot of chocolate because I know it isn't very healthy. In the evening, I want to relax, so I read a book.

Review on Unit (1)

Ecosystems

grassland	المراعى / أرض عُشبية	animals	حيوانات
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	species	أنواع / فصائل
freshwater	ماء عذب	soil	تربة زراعية
living things	كائنات حية	thick	سميك
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	canopy	مظلة
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	community	مجتمع

Animals

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	worm	دودة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	cub	شبل
lizard	سحلية	buzzing bees	نحل يزن / يطن

The heart

arteries	شرايين	oxygen	اكسجين
veins	أوردة	beat	يدق / ينبض
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood	دم

Others

salt water	ماء مالح	wadi	وادي
mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف	illnesses	أمراض
custard apple tree	شجرة تفاح الكاسترد	diseases	أمراض
medicinal plant	نبات طبي	interact	يتفاعل
survive	ينجو / يبقى علي قيد الحياة	pollen	حبوب اللقاح

Adjective		Abstract Noun	
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح



Relative Clauses

who الذي / التي (للعاقل) — **for people**

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which الذي / التي (لغير العاقل) — **for things**

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem which is normally dry.

where حيث (للمكان) — **for places**

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.



Linking Words

and

- We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

but

- Hany likes basketball, but he doesn't like football.

because

- Nadine goes to the pool because she loves to swim.

so

- Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

غابة .... بحري ....
مياه عذبة .... صحراء ....
أرض عُشبية .... عاصفة ....
غابة مطيرة .... رحلة ....

Lesson (3)

معرض .... فاكهة الكاسترد ....
مصور فوتوغرافي .... مظلة غابات الأمازون المطيرة ....
الحياة البرية .... يتعلم ....

Lesson (4)

دودة .... طائر الرفراف ....
حبوب اللقاح .... الأطوم (حيوان ثديي مائي) ....

Lesson (5)

دم .... قلب ....
الجهاز الدوري .... شرايين ....
ثاني أكسيد الكربون .... أوردة ....

Lesson (7)

أشعة الشمس .... ميت ....
صلب / قاسٍ .... مطر ....
بسعادة .... جميل ....
شبل .... جوع ....
دافئ .... يوم حار ....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (1)

ص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Your heart .... over 100,000 times a day
   a) beats b) moves c) runs d) swims
2. It's important to keep your heart ....
   a) open b) healthy c) unhealthy d) close
3. When you walk, run, swim or cycle, you make your .... work harder
   a) blood b) heart c) brain d) stomach
4. If you .... regularly, your heart works better
   a) sleep b) exercise c) play video games d) watch TV

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Arteries - blood - oxygen - carbon dioxide - water

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry 1) .... around our bodies. 2) .... move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and 3) .... that we need are in our blood. But we don't use 4) .... like plants do.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There are a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers.

Activities on Unit (1)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The mangrove trees help young fish ....
   a) die b) destroy c) survive d) damage
2. The main idea of the text is the ....
   a) oxygen b) fish c) mangrove trees d) butterflies
3. Bees are a kind of ....
   a) birds b) fish c) insects d) mammals

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What kinds of living things live in the mangrove forests?

....

5. What do bees make from mangrove flowers?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ( )
2. Jubari wasn't very brave. ( )
3. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle. ( )
4. Donga is Jubari's mother. ( )

B Complete the following sentences.

1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on .... days.
2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was desert ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I want to be healthy .... I don't eat chocolate.
   a) because b) so c) but d) or
2. This is the boy .... has a cough.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
3. This is a place .... it sometimes snows.
   a) what b) who c) where d) when
4. A wadi is an ecosystem .... is normally dry.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
5. Hany likes basketball .... he doesn't like tennis.
   a) or b) and c) so d) but
6. She goes to the pool .... she likes swimming.
   a) but b) because c) and d) so

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lives - What - in - forests - mangrove - ?

....

2. likes - but - Wael - doesn't like - fish, - lamb - he - .

....

3. fruit - Seleem - food - eats - healthy - like - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Ecosystems

Guiding elements:

(kinds - living - non-living - each other - interact)

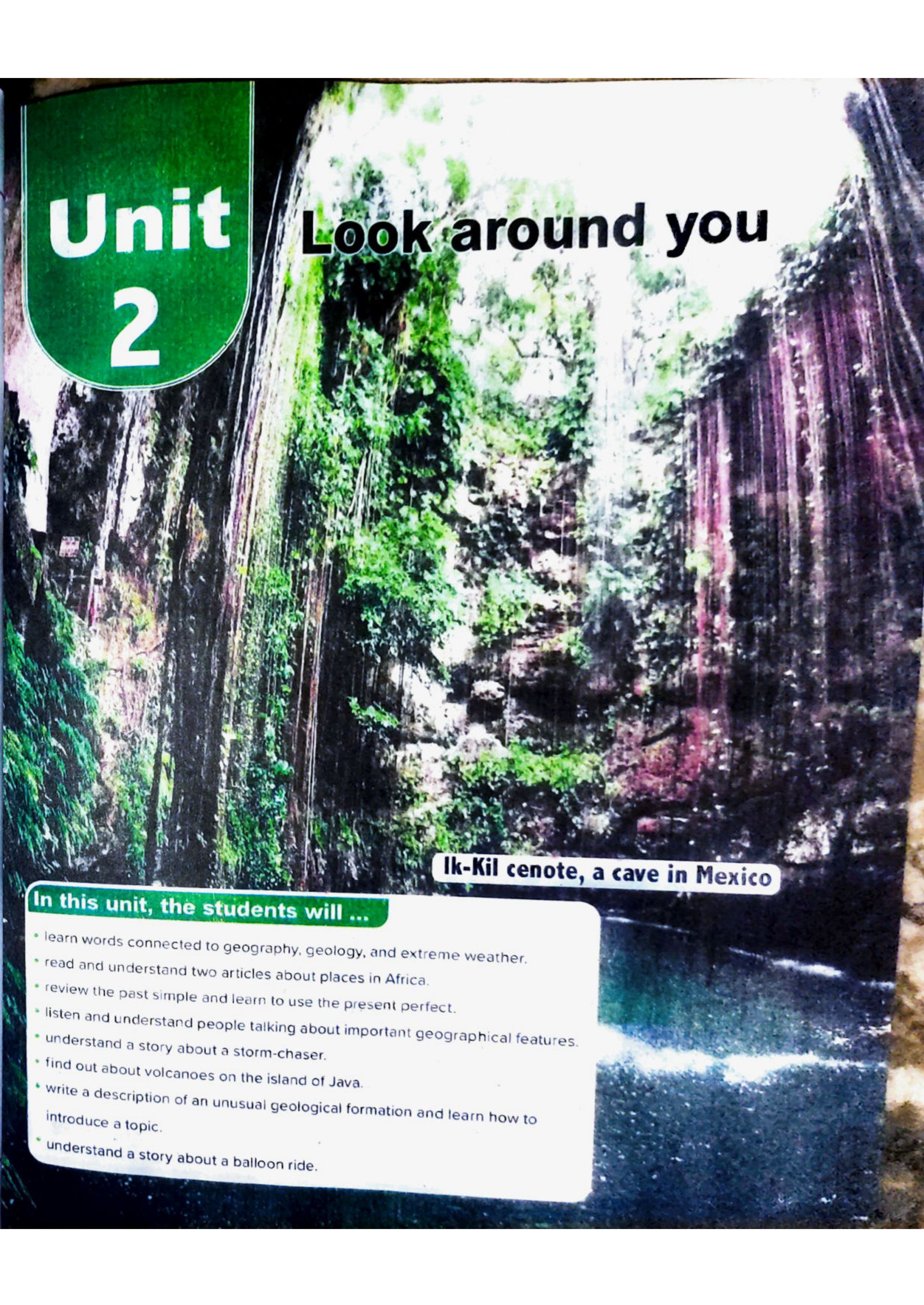
....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Unit 2 Look around you

Ik-Kil cenote, a cave in Mexico

In this unit, the students will ...

- learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather.
- read and understand two articles about places in Africa.
- review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect.
- listen and understand people talking about important geographical features.
- understand a story about a storm-chaser.
- find out about volcanoes on the island of Java.
- write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to introduce a topic.
- understand a story about a balloon ride.

Key vocabulary

erode	يفتت / يزيل / ينحت	crater	فوهة (بركان)	erupt	
wetlands	أراضي رطبة / مستنقعات	wonders	عجائب	canyon	عميق
dunes	كثبان رملية	continent	قارة	valley	ي

Natural Wonders

Ngorongoro Crater	ة بركان نجورونجورو
Mount Kilimanjaro	ل كليمنجارو
Victoria Falls	لالات فيكتوريا
the Sahara Desert	صحراء الكبرى

Extra vocabulary

mountain	جبل	buffalos	جاموس
ecosystem	النظام البيئي	lake	بحيرة
leopard	فهد	grasslands	أراضي عشبية / مراعي
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	enormous	ضخم - هائل
snow	جليد	coast	ساحل
cubic	مكعب	farther	أبعد
volcano	بركان	shape	شكل
volcanic	بركاني	dry	جاف
Antarctic	القطب الجنوبي	Arctic	القطب الشمالي

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
form	يشكل - يكون	formed	formed
include	يتضمن - يشتمل	included	included
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed

Definitions

canyon	a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks	وادٍ عميق
crater	the large round hole in the middle of a volcano	فوهة (بركان)
dune	a hill made of sand shaped by the wind	كثيب رملي
erode	changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea etc.	يزيل / يتآكل
erupt	send out smoke and fire (from a volcano)	يثور
valley	a low area of land between two mountains	وادى
wetland	an area of land that is often covered by water	مستنقع / أرض رطبة

Did you know ?

There are thousands of cenotes (فجوات صخرية) in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions

square kilometer	متر مربع	fall into	يقع - يسقط في
over 600 meters tall	يزيد طوله عن ٦٠٠ متر	a low area	منطقة منخفضة
on the borders	على الحدود	at the top	على القمة
tropical rainforests	غابات استوائية مطيرة	made of	يتكون من
a deep narrow place	مكان ضيق عميق	covered by	مغطى بـ
shaped by the wind	تشكل بواسطة الرياح	cubic meter	متر مكعب

Note: *How + adj.* صفة ....?

- How big...? كم حجم ..... ؟
- How wide ...? كم عرض ..... ؟
- How high ...? كم ارتفاع ..... ؟
- How long...? كم المدة ..... ؟
- How tall...? كم طول ..... ؟

1- How big is the Ngorongoro Crater? - 260 square kilometers.

2- How wide are the Victoria Falls? - 1,708 meters wide.

3- How high are the Victoria Falls? - 108 meters high.

4- How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro? - 5,895 meters tall.

5- How big is the Sahara Desert? - About the size of the USA.

6- How long have people lived in the Sahara Desert? - Thousands of years.

Did you know ?

There are more than 20 deserts around the world.

Asia has the most desert of the continents.

Look and read.

NATURAL WONDERS OF AFRICA

عجائب أفريقيا الطبيعية

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Let's read about four of these.

القارة الأفريقية مكان رائع ، به الجبال والصحاري والبحيرات والوديان والغابات المطيرة. هناك سواحل جميلة وشلالات وبراكين. بها بعض من عجائب الطبيعة الأكثر شهرة في العالم. دعونا نقرأ عن أربعة من هذه.

1) Ngorongoro Crater:

فوهة نجورونجورو:



The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffaloes, and leopards.

فوهة نجورونجورو في تنزانيا هي أكبر فوهة بركانية في العالم. تشكلت عندما ثار بركان منذ ملايين السنين. تبلغ مساحتها حوالي 260 كيلومترا مربعا. يبلغ طول جوانب الحفرة أكثر من 600 متر ، وفي الداخل توجد أراضي رطبة وغابات. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات والطيور والنباتات المختلفة هناك. تعيش هناك العديد من الحيوانات الكبيرة ، بما في ذلك الأسود والفيلة والجاموس والفهود.

2) Victoria Falls:

شلالات فيكتوريا:



This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

هذا الشلال الهائل يقع على نهر زامبيزي ، على الحدود بين زامبيا وزيمبابوي. يبلغ عرض الشلال 1708 متر وارتفاعه 108 متر. في كل دقيقة ، يسقط أكثر من 5 ملايين متر مكعب من المياه في واد كبير والتي كونته المياه. عندما يسقط الماء ، فإنه يُحدث الكثير من الضوضاء!

Help your child read about some natural wonders in Africa.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن بعض العجائب الطبيعية في إفريقيا.

3) Mount Kilimanjaro:

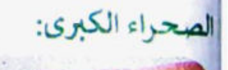
جبل كليمنجارو:



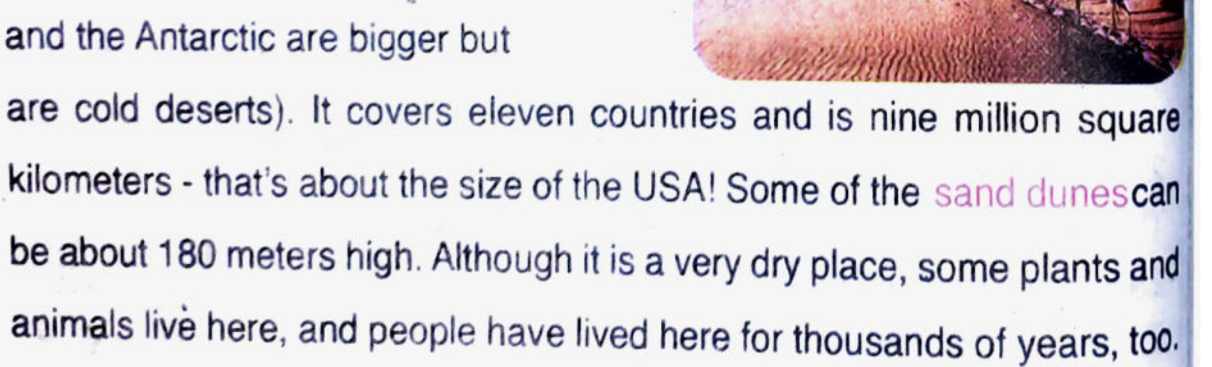
Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

يتكون جبل كليمنجارو من ثلاثة براكين. يعتقد العلماء أنه لم تثر منذ 360 ألف سنة. جبل كليمنجارو هو الأطول في أفريقيا ، بارتفاع 5895 متر. كل عام ، يتسلقه حوالي 25 ألف شخص، لكن الأمر صعب. الجبل كبير جدا وبه الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة. يبدأ في الأراضي العشبية الحارة. وصعودا إلى قمته توجد غابات مطيرة استوائية ، وفي الأعلى يوجد ثلج وجليد.

4) The Sahara Desert:



الصحراء الكبرى:



The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand dunescan be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

الصحراء الكبرى هي الأكثر حرارة في العالم (القطب الشمالي والقطب الجنوبي أكبر ولكنها صحاري باردة). تغطي إحدى عشرة دولة وتبلغ مساحتها تسعة ملايين كيلومتر مربع-وهذا يعادل حجم الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية! يمكن أن يصل ارتفاع بعض الكثبان الرملية إلى حوالي 180 مترا. على الرغم من أنه مكان جاف للغاية ، إلا أن بعض النباتات والحيوانات تعيش هنا ، وقد عاش الناس هنا منذ آلاف السنين أيضا.

Help your child read about some natural wonders in Africa.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن بعض العجائب الطبيعية في إفريقيا.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Victoria Falls are on the .... River.
   a) Zambezi b) Nile c) Amazon d) Mississippi
2. Victoria Falls are .... meters wide.
   a) 1,608 b) 1,708 c) 1,808 d) 1,908
3. Victoria Falls are 108 meters ....
   a) deep b) wide c) high d) long
4. When the water falls, it makes a lot of ....
   a) sound b) voice c) view d) noise

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

countries - dry - largest - dunes - cities

The Sahara Desert is the 1) .... hot desert in the world. It covers eleven 2) .... and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand 3) .... can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very 4) .... place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three ....
   a) floods b) volcanoes c) earthquakes d) craters

2. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in ....

a) Asia b) Africa c) America d) Europe

3. Every year, about 25 .... people climb i

a) tens b) hundred c) thousand d) million

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text? ....

5. Where can you find snow and ice? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Mount - How tall - is - Kilimanjaro - ?

....

2. is - the - The Sahara Desert - desert - hottest - in the world - .

....

3. continent - The African - place - amazing - an - is - .

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic .... in the wor

a) crater b) wetland c) dune d) desert

2. The sand .... can be about 180 meters hig

a) dunes b) desert c) wetland d) river

3. A .... is a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rock

a) valley b) canyon c) crater d) dune

4. " .... " means to send out smoke and fire from a volcan

a) Destroy b) Cover c) Erupt d) Erode

5. A .... is a low area of land between two mountain

a) crater b) wetland c) canyon d) valley

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The African Continent

Guiding elements:

(amazing - coasts - natural - wonders)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	papyrus	ورق البردي
climate change	تغير المناخ	sail on a boat	يبحر في قارب
geographical facts	حقائق جغرافية	travel by plane	يسافر بالطائرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
visit	يزور	visited	visited
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
last	يدوم / يستمر	lasted	lasted

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
get	يحصل على	got	got
tell	يخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
make	يصنع	made	made
see	يرى	saw	seen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
do / does	يفعل	did	done
be	يكون	was / were	been

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form The second form of the verb

- يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم)
- الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ:

1. Regular: verb + (d / ed / ied)
2. Irregular: the verb changes

e.g. I traveled to Luxor last week.

e.g. We ate fish yesterday.

Usage

To talk about an action that started and finished in the past

e.g. I went to the park last month.

Negative Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf (مصدر الفعل) ......

e.g. I didn't visit the desert last Friday.

Question

Yes/No question

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. Did you do your homework? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh-question

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. When did you travel to Aswan? - I traveled there a year ago.

Keywords

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي	... ago	منذ
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	in the past	في الماضي		

Help your child learn Past Simple Tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... to the zoo yesterday.
   a) go   b) went   c) will go   d) goes
2. When did you .... tennis?
   a) play   b) plays   c) playing   d) played
3. We .... Aswan two weeks ago.
   a) visit   b) visited   c) have visited   d) visits
4. Why .... you go to the market last week?
   a) do   b) does   c) did   d) will
5. We .... swim in the sea yesterday.
   a) didn't   b) aren't   c) haven't   d) don't

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. made - tea - of - I - a cup - .
   ....
2. did - eat - What - yesterday - you - ?
   ....
3. on - Did - yesterday - a ship - travel - you - ?
   ....
4. did - an hour - ago - homework - We - our - .
   ....
5. didn't - ful - medames - eat - They - .
   ....

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. I .... (travel) to Alexandria last year.
2. We .... (go) shopping two weeks ago.
3. She .... (meets) her friends last Friday.
4. Sherif .... (studies) English yesterday.
5. He never .... (travels) by plane in the past.

Present Perfect Tense.

زمن المضارع التام

Form

I / We / You / They / plural noun	+	have	+ P.P
He / She / It / singular noun	+	has	

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

've = have

's = has

Usage

- To talk about actions that started in the past and continue to the present. يعبر عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن:

e.g. I've lived in Cairo for 20 years.

- To talk about an experience. للتحدث عن خبرة (تجربة حياتية):

e.g. She has met the king.

Negative

I / We / You / They / plural noun	+ haven't	+ P.P ....
He / She / It / singular noun	+ hasn't	

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Question

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)	+	P.P ....?
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)		

Have you bought a car?

- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.

Lesson (2)

Has she traveled to France?

- Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

Wh-question

Q.W + have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + P.P .....?

Q.W + has + (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P .....?

Where have you been? I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just توًا

e.g. I've just bought a pen.

already بالفعل

e.g. He's already cooked a meal. - I have cooked a meal already.

yet بعد/حتى الآن
"في السؤال و النفي"

e.g. Have you done your homework yet?

e.g. No, I haven't done my homework yet.

ever من قبل/سبق
"في السؤال"

e.g. Have you ever seen an elephant?

never أبدًا
"تعطى معنى النفي"

e.g. No, I've never seen an elephant.

since منذ
"يأتي بعدها بداية الحدث"

e.g. I've studied English since 2017.

for لمدة
"يأتي بعدها مدة الحدث"

e.g. I've studied English for 7 years.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Waleed .... by bus, taxi, and train.
   a) has traveled b) travel c) traveling d) have traveled
2. My uncle .... us about his trip to Cairo.
   a) has told b) tell c) have told d) telling
3. Grandma .... ful medames for breakfast.
   a) have made b) has made c) making d) make
4. We .... on a boat.
   a) has never sailed b) sails
   c) have never sailed d) never sailing
5. Aya has never .... a famous person.
   a) meet b) will meet c) meets d) met

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. ever - Luxor - to - you - Have - traveled - ?
....
2. a traditional - She - market - visited - has - .
....
3. has - traveled - Aswan - to - never - Sara - .
....
4. they - another - Have - country - visited - ever - ?
....
5. eaten - He - has - saydeya - never - .
....

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. I have .... (see) Omar in the club.
2. We have .... (ever) travelled to America.
3. My grandpa's .... (tell) us a nice story.
4. .... (Have) she bought an ice cream yet?
5. Have you .... (never) sailed on a boat?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

travel - visited - holiday - went - have gone

Reem and Ahmed are going to Luxor on 1) .... with their parents this year. They haven't 2) .... Luxor before. They are going to 3) .... to Luxor from Cairo. It isn't the first time they've traveled somewhere. They 4) .... to Jordan two years ago.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sherif .... fish from the Nile many times.
   a) eat b) has eaten c) have eaten d) eaten
2. We .... Aswan yet.
   a) visited b) will visit c) have visited d) haven't visited
3. .... he traveled on a plane or train?
   a) Is b) Was c) Have d) Has
4. I .... you this story already.
   a) tell b) have told c) has told d) will tell
5. Have you ever .... on a ship?
   a) traveled b) to travel c) travels d) traveling
6. .... fish soup?
   a) You have eaten b) Has eaten he
   c) Have you eaten d) You are eating
7. A) Have you visited the desert? B) Yes, I ....
   a) am b) have c) has d) can
8. Has Fares .... traveled by train?
   a) ever b) never c) yet d) for
9. Youssef and Wael .... seen an elephant.
   a) has never b) have never c) are never d) never have
10. Has Mom .... fesikh for Sham El-Nassim?
    a) make b) makes c) made d) making

Lesson (3) MAN-MADE WONDERS OF AFRICA

Key vocabulary

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	excited	متحمس
archaeologist	عالم الآثار	incredible	لا يصدق - غير معقول
ruins	أطلال - بقايا	temples	معابد
centuries	قرون	cave	كهف
columns	أعمدة	monuments	آثار

Wonders of Africa

Man-made wonders in Africa		Country	
Paintings in a cave	رسومات على جدران كهف	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا
Ruins of Great Zimbabwe	أطلال زيمبابوي العظمى	Zimbabwe	زيمبابوي
The Canopy Walk	ممشى كانوبي برواندا	Rwanda	رواندا
Kano City Walls	أسوار مدينة كانو بنيجيريا	Nigeria	نيجيريا
Pyramids of Meroë	أهرامات ميرو بالسودان	Sudan	السودان
Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة		
the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك	Egypt	مصر
the Sphinx	أبو الهول		

Natural wonders

Natural wonders in Africa		Country	
Red Sea Coral Reef	الشعاب المرجانية بالبحر الأحمر	Egypt	مصر
Ocavango Delta	دلتا أوكافنجو	Botswana	بتسوانا

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
show	يعرض	showed	shown

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Extra Vocabulary

stone	حجر	unusual	غريب - غير مألوف	ground	أرض
zebra	حمار وحشي	interested	مهتم	special	خاص / مميز

Important expressions and prepositions

from other countries	من دول أخرى
Nyungwe National Park	متنزه نونجوى الوطني
Thousands of years ago	منذ آلاف السنين
There's a lot more to see	هناك الكثير لتراه
The Afrikaans Language Monument	أثر اللغة الأفريكانية
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم

Did you know ?

There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1,500 - 2,000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese.

Look and read.

Man-made Wonders of Africa

عجائب أفريقية من صنع الإنسان

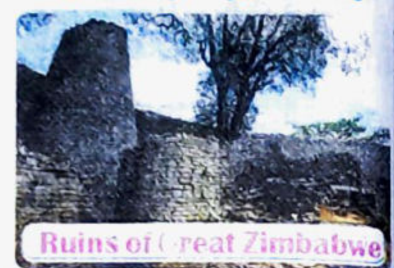
The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

العالم الطبيعي في أفريقيا جميل ، لكن الناس في هذه القارة صنعوا العديد من الأشياء المذهلة أيضا. بعض أهم هذه العجائب التي من صنع الإنسان في مصر: أهرامات الجيزة وأبو الهول ومعابد أبو سمبل ووادي الملوك. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لزيارة هذه الأماكن والتعرف على تاريخ مصر. ولكن هناك الكثير لرؤيته في أفريقيا.


Paintings in a cave

In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people. Archaeologists think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.

في شمال إفريقيا ، توجد لوحات على الصخور و في الكهوف التي صنعها الناس منذ آلاف السنين. وغالبا ما تُظهر الحيوانات والناس. علماء الآثار يعتقدون أن الصحراء لم تكن جافة في الماضي لأن بعض اللوحات تظهر حيوانات مثل التماسيح التي تعيش في الماء.


Ruins of Great Zimbabwe

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11^{th} and 15^{th} centuries.

في زيمبابوي ، هناك أنقاض زيمبابوي العظمى، وهي مدينة مهمة تم بناؤها بين القرنين الـ 11 والـ 15.

It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world. A newer monument is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

كان لها جدران حجرية كبيرة جدا ، وباع النّاس هنا الكثير من الأشياء إلى بلدان مختلفة حول العالم. كما يقع أثر أحدث في جنوب افريقيا. وهو نُصب اللغة الافريكانية المصنوع من أعمدة حجرية والذى افتتح في عام 1975. تطورت اللغة الأفريكانية عندما جاء أشخاص من دول أخرى إلى إفريقيا. اللغة بها كلمات من الكثير منَ البلدان المختلفة ، وتستخدم الآن في جنوب أفريقيا وناميبيا.


The Canopy Walk

Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park. The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.

زوار رواندا يمكن أن يقوموا بمغامرة مذهلة في الغابات المطيرة وذلك على ممشى كانوبي في حديقة نيونجوي الوطنية. تم بناء الجسر في 2010. ويبلغ طوله 160 متر وارتفاعه 74 متر فوق الأرض. إنه في أعلى جزء من الأشجار، لذلك يمكن للزوار رؤية القرود والطيور.

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 **Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

Egypt - history - Kings - man-made - princes

Some of the most important 1) .... wonders are in 2) .... The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel and the Valley of the 3) .... People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's 4) ....

2 **Read the following text then answer the questions.**

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries. It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.

A newer monument is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Great Zimbabwe city was built between the 11th and 15th
   a) decades b) centuries c) months d) years
2. The Afrikaans Language Monument is in ....
   a) Egypt b) Zimbabwe c) Nigeria d) South Africa
3. The Afrikaans Language is now used in .... countries.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun It refer to?

....

5. Where is the Afrikaans Language used now?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Africa is a ....
   a) lake b) country c) city d) continent
2. Some of the most important man-made .... are in Egypt.
   a) wonders b) wanders c) mountains d) rivers
3. .... think that the Sahara wasn't dry in the past.
   a) Doctors b) Teachers c) Farmers d) Archaeologists
4. In Zimbabwe, there are the .... of Great Zimbabwe which was an important city.
   a) rules b) ruins c) roles d) oars
5. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone ....
   a) poles b) columns c) circles d) squares
6. Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest ...... on the Canopy Walk.
   a) match b) sport c) adventure d) tree
7. You can enjoy visiting the .... of Abu Simbel.
   a) rocks b) caves c) walls d) temples
8. The Red Sea Coral Reef is a .... wonder.
   a) natural b) man-made c) normal d) usual
9. You can see paintings of animals and people inside some ...... in North Africa.
   a) houses b) factories c) clubs d) caves
10. In which countries do people speak the Afrikaans .... ?
    a) symbol b) style c) Language d) subject
11. What's special about the Canopy .... in Rwanda?
    a) Walk b) Run c) Ruin d) Painting

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Desert - the past - The Sahara - dry - in - wasn't - .
   ....
2. see - and - Rwanda - in - Visitors - birds - monkeys - can - .
   ....
3. 54 - Africa - in - There - countries - are - .
   ....
4. world - The natural - Africa - is - beautiful - in - .
   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

STORY: THE STORM-CHASER

Key vocabulary

storm-chaser	متتبع العواصف	hurricane	إعصار
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
extreme weather	طقس شديد	flood	فيضان
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية	snow	جليد

Extra vocabulary

forecast	نشرة جوية - يتنبأ	The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
trip	رحلة قصيرة	event	حدث
frightened	خائف	competition	مسابقة
loud	عالي الصوت	during	أثناء

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
fly	يطير - يسافر	flew	flown
drive	يقود	drove	driven
take	يأخذ	took	taken
win	يفوز	won	won
send	يرسل	sent	sent
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept
forecast	يتنبأ	forecast / ed	forecast /

Important expressions and prepositions

20 kilometres away	على بعد عشرين كيلو متر	stay at	يمكث في / يقيم في
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	close to	قريب من
keep safe	يحافظ على سلامة	travel to	يسافر إلى
heavy snow	ثلوج كثيفة	for work	لأجل العمل
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة لـ
dangerous situations	مواقف خطيرة	drive away	يقود سيارته بعيدًا

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Study the flowing.

The thunderstorm was white and it looked like ice cream!

كانت العاصفة الرعدية بيضاء وبدت مثل الآيس كريم.

The hurricane was very noisy. The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.

كان الأعصار صاخبًا. كانت السماء سوداء وأمطرت طوال فترة الظهيرة.

After the dust storm , there was a lot of dust on my parents' new car.

بعد العاصفة الترابية كان هناك الكثير من التراب على سيارة والداي الجديدة.

The storm-chaser followed the thunderstorm in his car .

تتبع متعقب العواصف العاصفة الرعدية وهو في سيارته.

Read the story.

The storm-chaser مطارد / متعقب العاصفة

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago, Kamal's parents said, "You can come with us when we next go away for work." Kamal was very excited because his parents were storm-chasers! These are people who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather is forecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

غالبا ما ذهب والدا كمال إلى بلدان أخرى لعملهم. عادة ، كان يبقى كمال وأخوته في المنزل مع أجدادهم.
قبل عامين ، قال والدا كمال: "يمكنك أن تأتي معنا المرة القادمة عندما نذهب للعمل."
كان كمال متحمسا جدا لأن والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصف! هؤلاء هم الأشخاص الذين يسافرون إلى أماكن يتوقع فيها إعصار أو شكل آخر من أشكال الطقس القاسي. يقتربون جدا من حدث الطقس القاسي لدراسته.

Kamal and his parents flew in a big plane to the USA where they could study hurricanes. "How can I help you when you work?" Kamal asked them when they arrived. "You can take some photos for us," they said, and they took something from a bag. It was a new camera! Kamal had seen thunderstorms in Egypt, but not a hurricane. It was very exciting.

Help your child read the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

سافر كمال ووالديه في طائرة كبيرة إلى الولايات المتحدة حيث يمكنهم دراسة الأعاصير. سألهم كمال عندما وصلوا: "كيف يمكنني مساعدتكم في العمل؟". قالوا: "يمكنك التقاط بعض الصور لنا"، وأخذوا شيئًا من الحقيبة. كانت كاميرا جديدة! كان كمال قد شهد عواصف رعدية في مصر، لكنه لم يشهد إعصارًا. كان الأمر مثيرًا للغاية.

When the hurricane was twenty kilometers away, they drove out to see it. Kamal took some photos of the hurricane through the car window while his parents were outside taking notes about how big the hurricane was. The wind was very strong and very loud and Kamal took many photos.

عندما كان الإعصار على بعد عشرين كيلومترا، انطلقوا بالسيارة لرؤيته. التقط كمال بعض الصور للإعصار من خلال نافذة السيارة بينما كان والديه بالخارج يدونان ملاحظات حول حجم الإعصار. كانت الرياح قوية جدا وبصوت عال جدا. التقط كمال العديد من الصور.

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal. "No, because I know you'll keep me safe," said Kamal. When the storm came too near to them, they drove away. Since that trip, Kamal has been to many other places with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, floods in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about the causes of extreme weather, such as global warming, and he has taken hundreds of photos.

سأل الوالد كمال "هل انت خائف؟". قال كمال: "لا، لأنني أعلم أنك ستحافظ على سلامتي". عندما اقتربت العاصفة منهم، ابتعدوا. منذ تلك الرحلة، ذهب كمال إلى العديد من الأماكن الأخرى مع والديه. كما رأي الثلوج الكثيفة في الجبال والفيضانات في السودان والعواصف الترابية المذهلة في الصحراء. لقد تعلم الكثير عن أسباب الطقس القاسي، مثل الاحتباس الحراري، وقد التقط مئات الصور.

Last year, his mom said, "Why don't you send some photos to this online competition?" So Kamal sent the photos you can see below. He won first prize for child photographers, and he also found that he is one of the world's youngest storm-chasers!

العام الماضي، قالت والدته، "لماذا لا ترسل بعض الصور الى هذه المسابقة عبر الإنترنت؟" لذلك أرسل كمال الصور التي يمكنك رؤيتها أدناه. فاز بالجائزة الأولى للمصورين الأطفال، واكتشف أيضا أنه واحد من أصغر متعقبي العواصف في العالم!



General Activities

ض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Kamal has been to many places with his ....
   a) friends   b) father   c) mother   d) parents
2. They saw heavy .... in the mountain
   a) snow   b) ice   c) rain   d) stones
3. They saw amazing dust storms in the ....
   a) forest   b) club   c) desert   d) tent
4. Kamal has learned a lot about extreme ....
   a) weather   b) feather   c) leather   d) climate

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

hurricane / study / storm-chasers / extreme / make

Kamal was very excited because his parents were
1) ....! These are people who travel to places where a
2) .... or another form of 3) .... weather is forecast
They get very close to the extreme weather event to 4) i

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... followed the thunderstorm in his c
   a) farmer   b) storm-chaser   c) engineer   d) doctor
2. The .... was white and looked like ice crea
   a) air   b) thunderstorm   c) weather   d) fog
3. The .... was very noi
   The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.
   a) snow   b) dust   c) sea   d) hurricance
4. After the ...., there was a lot of water in the roa
   a) drought   b) flood   c) earthquake   d) clouds
5. Kamal .... photos of the hurrica
   a) had   b) took   c) spent   d) drove

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. After the ...., there was lot of dust on our car.
   a) snow   b) hurricane   c) dust storm   d) flood
7. Kamal .... the first prize for child photographers.
   a) won   b) earned   c) gained   d) played
8. Have you ever seen an extreme .... ?
   a) weather   b) whether   c) wizard   d) feather

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. he - Has - taken - of - photos - hundreds - ?

....

2. on - mountain - Heavy - fell - the - snow - .

....

3. are - thunderstorms - in - interested - Storm-chasers - .

....

4. some photos - They - of - hurricane - the - took - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The storm-chaser

Guiding words:

(photographer - hurricanes - dust storms - thunderstorms - floods)

....

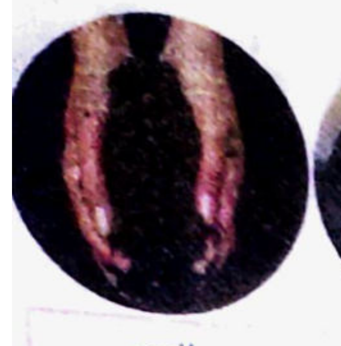
....

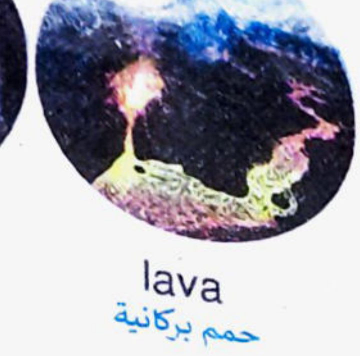
....

....

....

Volcanoes البراكين





soil تربة زراعية | erupt يثور (البركان) | ash رماد | lava حمم بركانية | mud flow تدفق الطين

Extra vocabulary

pretty	جميل	mountain	
village	قرية	smoke	
poem	قصيدة	below	
burn	يحترق	online	متصلة بالإنترنت / على الإنترنت
material	مادة خام	fill	
Java Island	جزيرة جاوا		

Definitions

erupt	when fire and rocks come out of the top of a volcano
soil	the top part of the Earth in which plants grow
lava	hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes
mud flow	soft, wet material that moves down mountains
ash	something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning

Important expressions and prepositions

a safe place	مكان آمن	come out of
the island people	سكان الجزيرة	go away
the helping hand	يد المساعدة	mix with
look down on	ينظر لأسفل على	come back

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Good things and bad things about living on Java



Java fact file

- Java is an island.
- There are many volcanoes on Java, for example Salak.
- When a volcano erupts , ash and fire come out of it and the people in the villages have to go away from their homes.
- The soil in Java is very good for growing plants.

I'd like to live on Java because it is a pretty place.

أود أن أعيش على جزيرة جاوا لأنها مكان جميل.



I wouldn't like to live on Java because it has a lot of dangerous volcanoes.

لا أود أن أعيش على جزيرة جاوا لأن بها الكثير من البراكين الخطيرة.



They're words with the same sound.

fire	higher
thirty-nine	online
away	stay
goes	flows
look	book
blood	mud

Listen and read the poem.

The Volcanoes of Java

Let me take you to the pretty island of Java,
Where almost everything is made of lava!
It comes from Java's volcanoes,
Which look down on the villages below.

The names of the volcanoes are:
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar ...
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!

When they erupt, there's ash and fire,
Smoke fills the air, going higher and higher,
The island people have to go away,
to a safe place where they can stay.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes soil where good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the land,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

Help your child listen to the poem.
طفلك أن يستمع الى القصيدة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

villages - volcanoes - island - lava - safe

Let me take you to the pretty 1) .... of Java,
where almost everything is made of 2) .... !
It comes from Java's 3) ....,
which look down on the 4) .... below.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The hot red .... quickly came down the side of the volcano.
   a) lava b) seed c) mud d) ash
2. If the volcanoes ...., fire and rocks will come out of the top of them.
   a) make b) erupt c) stay d) take
3. After three days of rain, a heavy .... came down the side of the big mountain.
   a) mud bank b) mud bath c) mud brick d) mud flow
4. In a few months, the seeds we planted in the .... will grow into small trees.
   a) sail b) floor c) soil d) land
5. When the fire stopped burning, there was lots of .... on the ground.
   a) ash b) water c) wood d) lava
6. The .... people have to go away when the volcanoes erupt.
   a) island b) river c) sea d) lake

3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The island of Java

Guiding words:

(pretty - lava - volcanoes - erupt - soil)

....

....

....

A DESCRIPTION

Key vocabulary

arch	قوس	unusual	غريب / غير مألوف
hole	فتحة / ثقب	rainbow	قوس قزح
natural	طبيعي	description	وصف
sandstone	حجر رملي	shape	شكل

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
write	يكتب	wrote	written
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Important expressions and prepositions

late afternoon	في وقت متأخر بعد الظهيرة	wildlife	الحياة البرية
water bottle	زجاجة ماء	a group of	مجموعة من
white limestone	حجر جير أبيض	full of	مملوء بـ
look orange	يبدو برتقالي اللون	wild flowers	زهور برية
in the early morning	في الصباح الباكر	sun hat	قبعة شمس
geological formations	تكوينات جيولوجية	tourist brochure	دليل سياحي
Nambung National Park	منتزه نامبونج الوطني	ride a horse	يركب حصان
		would like to	يود أن

Read the description.

Rainbow Bridge National Monument - Utah, USA

جسر قوس قزح
اثر جسر قوس قزح الوطني- يوتا ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone.



جسر قوس قزح هو واحد من أكبر الأقواس الطبيعية في العالم. بل إن عمره أيضا 200 مليون سنة. هو على بحيرة باول في ولاية يوتا ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. يبلغ طوله 88 مترا وهو مكون من الحجر الرملي الأحمر والبني.

A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years.
Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910.
If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

تسبب نهر في تكوين حفرة بسبب التاكل في الحجر الرملي وشكل قوس على مدى سنوات عديدة. يعتبر جسر قوس قزح نصبا وطنيا منذ عام 1910. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارته ، عليك أن تأخذ قارب، أو تركب حصان أو تمشي إليه.

It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat!

انه في صحراء حارة جدا لذلك ، ينبغي عليك زيارته في الربيع أو في الخريف. لا تنس أن تأخذ زجاجة المياه الخاصة بك وقبعة الشمس!

Read the description.

The Pinnacles



القمم الصخرية

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia.

القمم الصخرية هي واحدة من أكثر التكوينات الجيولوجية غير العادية في غرب أستراليا.

They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25.000 to 30.000 years old. They are made of white limestone which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes.

هم مجموعة من الصخور البيضاء الطويلة في منتزه نامبونج الوطني. وعمرها يتراوح من 25 إلى 30 ألف سنة.
وتكونت من الحجر الجيري الأبيض بفعل الأمطار والرياح إلى أشكال مختلفة.

The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

يتراوح ارتفاع الأعمدة الأطول بين ثلاثة وخمسة أمتار. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارة القمم ، فإن أفضل وقت في اليوم
لرؤيتها هو في الصباح الباكر أو في وقت متأخر بعد الظهر.

At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

في هذه الأوقات، تجعل الشمس الأعمدة تبدو برتقالية اللون في مقابل الكثبان الرملية الصفراء في الصحراء.
أفضل وقت في السنة لرؤيتهم هو بين أغسطس وأكتوبر عندما تكون الصحراء مليئة بالزهور البرية الجميلة!
يمكنك القيادة إلى هناك من مدينة بيرث في غضون ساعتين.



Writing

Writing a description of an unusual geological formation.
كتابة وصف عن تكوين جيولوجي غريب.

Tip!:

- To introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.
- Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence.
- Next, include the location and age of the formation.
- Explain how it was formed.
- Describe what it looks like and how big it is.
- Add extra, interesting information about it.
- Tell people how they can visit it.

Do some research. Use the internet and complete the table.

The White Desert, Egypt

Name	....
Location	....
Age	....
Size / Shape	....
Made of	....
Eroded by	....
When to visit	....
How to get there	....

Use the information to write a description of 50 words.

Help your child write a description of a geological formation. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب وصفًا عن تكوين جيولوجي.

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Lake - eroded - sandstone - arches - Nile

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural 1) .... in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on 2) .... Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown 3) .... A river 4) .... a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch many years ago.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rainbow .... is one of the largest natural arches in the world.
   a) Pole b) Pyramid c) Stone d) Bridge
2. A river .... a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch.
   a) washed b) watered c) eroded d) filled
3. You can .... a horse to visit Rainbow Bridge.
   a) hit b) drive c) walk d) ride
4. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a .... hat.
   a) star b) moon c) sun d) planet
5. Rainbow Bridge is a natural geological ....
   a) nation b) pollution c) information d) formation
6. The monument is made of ....
   a) paper b) fabric c) sandstone d) plastic
7. You should visit the Rainbow Bridge in the .... season.
   a) October b) Friday c) summer d) weak
8. The Pinnacles are a group of tall white ....
   a) trees b) clothes c) shops d) rocks

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual .... formations.
   a) local b) geological c) historical d) physical
2. The Pinnacles are made of white ....
   a) sand dunes b) limes c) rocks d) limestone
3. You can drive there from the city of Perth in .... minutes.
   a) 2 b) 60 c) 120 d) 40

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the text about?

....

5. What is the best time of day to visit the Pinnacles?

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. years - **Rainbow** - 200 - old - million - is - Bridge - .

....

2. a hole - sandstone - **A river** - the - in - eroded - .

....

3. is - a very - desert - hot - **The monument** - in - .

....

4. to - water - **Don't** - bottle - your - take - forget - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY: A BALLOON RIDE

Key vocabulary

balloon	منطاد	basket	سلة
pilot	طيار	ribbon	شريط
gentle	لطيف	flame	لهب / شُعلة
light -lit	يشعل / أشعل		

Extra vocabulary

tickets	تذاكر	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
festival	مهرجان	palm tree	نخلة
flight	رحلة جوية	tiny	صغير جدًا
excited	مسرور / سعيد	enormous	ضخم
statues	تماثيل	rope	حبل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
pick	يلتقط	picked	picked
drop	يُسقِط	dropped	dropped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
fly	يطير / يسافر	flew	flown
fall	يقع	fell	fallen
find	يجد	found	found
shine	تشرق / تسطع	shone	shone

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (7)

Definitions

ribbon	a long, soft piece of material	شريط
gentle	slow, not fast or extreme	لطيف
basket	people use it to carry things, and a big one can carry people	سلة
flame	the burning gas that you see in a fire	لهب / شعلة
light / lit	make/made something start to burn	يشعل

Important expressions and prepositions

hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
a hat on his head	على رأسه قبعة
a perfect weather	طقس مثالي
have a ride	يأخذ جولة
climb into	يتسلق
touch the clouds	يلامس السحاب
special coat	معطف مميز
fall out of	يسقط من

Listen and read the story.

"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom. "It's late."
Mariam was in the garden. She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they visited and the things they saw. "I would love to fly," she said. "Like a bird?" Mom laughed. "You are funny!" Mariam's dad came home. He was happy. "Look! I've got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival! We'll see balloons in lots of colors."

قالت أمي:" تعالى إلى الداخل يا مريم". "الوقت متأخر". كانت مريم في الحديقة. كانت تحب مشاهدة الطيور. فكرت في الأماكن التي زاروها والأشياء التي رأوها. قالت:" أحب الطيران". سألتها أمها، وهي تضحك "مثل الطيور؟ أنتِ مضحكة". عاد والد مريم إلى المنزل. كان سعيدا. وقال "انظرا لدي تذاكر لمهرجان الأقصر للمناطيد الهوائية! سنرى المناطيد ذات الألوان الكثيرة."

Mariam was very excited. All week, she thought about the festival. Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man. He had a special coat and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot! As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ran to pick it up.

كانت مريم متحمسة للغاية. طوال الأسبوع ، فكرت في المهرجان. أخيرا ، حان اليوم. كانت مريم تراقب كل شيء عندما رأت رجلا طويل القامة. كان لديه معطف مميز وقبعة على رأسه. كان طيار منطاد هوائي! بينما كان يبتعد ، سقط كتاب من حقيبته. لم يكن يعلم. ركضت مريم لالتقاط الكتاب.

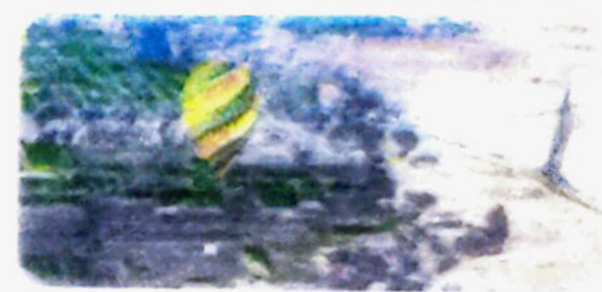
"Look, Mom!" she said. "It's a book about hot air balloon flights." "Oh no!" said Mom. "It's his diary! It's about everywhere he's been." "We must give it back!" said Mariam. Together they ran until they found the man."

قالت مريم "انظري يا أمي!". "إنه كتاب عن رحلات منطاد هوائي. قالت الأم "أوه لا!". "إنها مذكراته! إنها عن كل الأماكن التي ذهب إليها." قالت مريم "يجب أن نعيدها!". ركضوا معا حتى وجدوا الرجل."

Lesson (7)

Hello! Did you drop this book?" said Mariam's dad. "Thank you!" the man said. "This book is important. I write everywhere that I have traveled to in the balloon! I want to thank you - would you like to have a ride?" He pointed to a beautiful balloon. "Yes, please!" they said.

قال والد مريم "مرحبا! هل أسقطت هذا الكتاب؟". قال الرجل "شكرا لك!". "هذا الكتاب مهم. أكتب فيه كل مكان سافرت إليه في المنطاد! أريد أن أشكركم - هل ترغب في الحصول على جولة؟" وأشار إلى منطاد جميل. قالوا "نعم، من فضلك!".



"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentle wind," he said. They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam watched as he lit the flame. As the air inside the balloon got hot, he dropped the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.

قال الرجل "إنه طقس مثالي اليوم، بدون مطر والرياح لطيفة". تبعوه إلى المنطاد وصعدوا إلى السلة. وشاهدته مريم وهو يشعل اللهب. عندما أصبح الهواء داخل المنطاد ساخنا ، أسقط الحبل وانطلق المنطاد ببطء في الهواء.

Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind blew them gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green fields and sandy deserts, palm trees, dunes, and mountains.

سرعان ما كانوا يطيرون فوق مدينة الأقصر الجميلة. نقلتهم الرياح بلطف خلال السماء الزرقاء الصافية. رأوا الحقول الخضراء والصحاري الرملية وأشجار النخيل والكثبان والجبال.

They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon. Everything was quiet, and the houses, cars, and boats were tiny. The sun shone and it felt like they could touch the clouds. "Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

طاروا فوق تماثيل ضخمة ومعابد جميلة. بدا النيل مثل الشريط الفضي. كان كل شيء هادئا ، وكانت المنازل والسيارات والقوارب صغيرة. أشرقت الشمس وشعروا أنه يمكنهم ملامسة الغيوم. قالت مريم "الآن أعرف ما يعني أن تكون طائرا!".

Help your

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

balloon - statues - excited - tickets- exciting

One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had 1) .... for the Luxor hot air 2) .... festival. Mariam's family were very 3) .... They climbed into the balloon. Soon they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous 4) .... and beautiful temples.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is a long, soft piece of materia
   a) flame b) basket c) balloon d) ribbon
2. To .... is to make something start to bur
   a) light b) fall c) fly d) play
3. The word " .... " means slow, not fast or extreme
   a) fast b) gentle c) quick d) excited
4. People use .... to carry things
   a) baskets b) balls c) ribbons d) balloons
5. " .... " is the burning gas that you see in a fir
   a) Flag b) Oxygen c) Air d) Flame
6. A .... is the person who flies a plane or a hot air balloo
   a) pilot b) farmer c) teacher d) baker

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. birds - Mariam - watching - loved - .
   ....
2. about - air - The book - flights - hot - balloon - is - .
   ....
3. a ride - Would - like - have - to - you - ?
   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mariam loved watching birds. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the festival. Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall man. Something fell. It was a diary. Mariam wanted to give it back. "Thank you," said the pilot. "Would you like to have a ride?" Mariam's family were very excited and they climbed into the balloon. Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mariam loved watching ....

   a) animals b) birds c) sports d) clouds

2. The festival was in ....

   a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Giza d) Luxor

3. Mariam's family were very ....

   a) tired b) excited c) sick d) noisy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What fell from the tall man?

....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: **A trip on a hot air balloon**

(Luxor - pilot - gentle - flame - tiny - statues - temples)

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Wonders of Africa

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, des
lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls,
volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the w
like Ngorongoro Crater, Victoria Falls, Mount Kilimanjaro and the Sa
Desert. There are man-made wonders too, like the Pyramids of Giz

Rainbow Bridge in the USA

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the w
It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It
meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroc
hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many y
Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you
to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is in a
hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't for
take your water bottle and a sun hat.

The Sahara Desert

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It c
eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be 180 meters
Although it is a hot and dry place, some animals and plants live

Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

valley	وادي	crater	فوهة بركان
canyon	واد ضيق - منحدر	dunes	كثبان (رملية)
wetlands	أراضي رطبة - مستنقعات	erode	ينحت - يفتت
erupt	يثور (البركان)	storm-chaser	متتبع العواصف
hurricane	إعصار	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
flood	فيضان	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	mountain	جبل
coast	ساحل	grassland	أرض عشبية
excited	مسرور - متحمس	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
archaeologist	عالم آثار	ruins	أطلال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	columns	أعمدة
lava	حمم بركانية	soil	تربة زراعية
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	رماد
arch	قوس	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
light - lit	يشعل - أشعل	flame	لهب - شعلة
pilot	طيار	hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
ribbon	شريط	gentle	لطيف

Natural Wonders

The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبال كليمنجارو
Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا	Ngorongoro Crater	فوهة بركان نجورونجورو

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I've played tennis.

e.g. She has eaten pizza.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. He hasn't slept early.

Question

Yes, No question — Have / Has + subject + P.P .....?

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

e.g. Has he ridden a bike?

Wh-question — Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P .....?

e.g. Where have you been? - I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just — I've just met my teacher.

ever — Have you ever seen a lion?

never — No, I've never seen a lion.

already — She's already fed the hens.
She's fed the hens already.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

أرض رطبة / مستنقع
وادٍ عميق
شلالات

قارة
كثبان رملية
وادي

يفتت / يزيل / يبحث
يثور
فوهة (بركان)

Lesson (2)

ورق بردي
يبحر في قارب
يسافر بالطائرة

المصريون القدماء
تغير المناخ
حقائق جغرافية

Lesson (3)

متخصص
لا يصدق / غير معقول
معبد
كهف
آثار

من صنع الإنسان
عالم الآثار
أطلال / بقايا
قرون
أعمدة

Lesson (4)

إعصار
عاصفة رعدية
فيضان
جليد

متتبع العواصف
مصور فوتوغرافي
طقس شديد
عاصفة ترابية

Lesson (5)

تربة زراعية
تدفق الطين
حمم بركانية

جزيرة جاوا
يثور (بركان)
رماد

Lesson (6)

غريب / غير مألوف
قوس قزح
وصف
شكل

قوس
فتحة / ثقب
طبيعي
حجر رملي

Lesson (7)

سلة
شريط
لهب / شعلة

منطاد
طيار
لطيف
يشعل / أشعل

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of .... volcanoes.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
2. The volcanoes haven't erupted for thousands of ....
   a) days b) weeks c) months d) years
3. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in ....
   a) Africa b) Asia c) Europe d) America
4. At the top of Kilimanjaro, there is .... and
   a) plant b) water c) sand d) snow

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

vets - hurricane - grandparents - weather - storm-chasers

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their 1) .... Kamal was very excited because his parents we 2) ....! These are people who travel to places where a 3) .... or another form of extreme 4) .... is fore

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the w It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It i meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river erod hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many ye Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is i a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. D forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. The main idea of the text is " Rainbow .... "
   a) Lake b) Bridge c) Sea d) Country
2. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since ....
   a) 2010 b) 1920 c) 1901 d) 1910
3. You should visit Rainbow Bridge in the .... or in the fall.
   a) winter b) spring c) summer d) autumn

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How tall is Rainbow Bridge?

....

5. How do you get to Rainbow Bridge?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari left the wadi. ____
2. The crocodile looked like a dead tree. ____
3. Jubari is a lion. ____
4. There are camels in the Wadi of camels. ____

B Complete the following sentences:

1. The water was very, very ....
2. Jubari looked and saw a big .... animal.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have .... seen a ...
   a) ever b) never c) ago d) since
2. Where .... you go yester...
   a) do b) have c) did d) are
3. Have you .... traveled to the US
   a) just b) already c) ever d) never
4. She .... Luxor two days a...
   a) visits b) will visit c) has visited d) visited
5. Where have you ....
   a) be b) being c) been d) were
6. We .... pizza last we...
   a) eat b) have eaten c) will eat d) ate

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. parents - Have - Sudan - to - been - Kamal's - ?

   ....
2. got - the - We - festival - for - tickets - have - .

   ....
3. countries - Desert - The Sahara - covers - eleven - .

   ....



7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A man-made wonder

Guiding elements:

(The Sphinx - Giza - head - body - long - tourists - fantastic)

....

....

....

...hild deal with such questions. ... أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه ...

Activities On Review (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Victoria Falls is on the Zambezi ....
   a) Sea b) Lake c) River d) Ocean
2. Every minute, ... million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon.
   a) three b) four c) five d) six
3. The water has .... the big canyon.
   a) erupted b) stopped c) eroded d) dried
4. The .... makes a lot of noise as it falls.
   a) water b) oil c) juice d) salt

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

Archaeologists - man-made - natural - volcano - desert

The Great Pyramid is 1) ...., which means that people made it. 2) .... can learn a lot about history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot about 3) wonders of the world such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was once a 4) .... which erupted millions of years ago.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Have you ever visited a rainforest? In Rwanda, you can see a beautiful rainforest in Volcanoes National Park. You will see a lot of different animals there like monkeys, snakes, and birds. If you are lucky, you might see a gorilla, too. You must be very quiet as you walk through the forest. You can't talk loudly to your friends and family. You don't want to scare the gorillas and other animals away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In Rwanda you can see a beautiful ....
   a) field b) rainforest c) desert d) storm

2. The underlined word "quiet" means ....

a) ugly   b) sad   c) calm   d) bad

3. You shouldn't .... the gorillas and other animals away.

a) protect   b) scare   c) love   d) help

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. What animals can you see in Rwanda?

....

5. How must you be as you walk through the forest?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari and his mother eat the desert daffodil. ( )
2. Gazelles eat the leaves of the acacia trees. ( )
3. Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles. ( )
4. Jubari's mother asked him to forget what she taught him. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari thought the mangroves were .... for gazelles.

2. Jubari's thought the beach was .... for gazelles.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. I .... my best friend two hours ago.
   a) see b) sees c) have seen d) saw
2. We have .... to Aswan.
   a) be b) were c) being d) been
3. He is healthy .... he eats fresh vegetables and fruit.
   a) and b) but c) so d) because
4. They met a man .... works in a garden.
   a) who b) which c) where d) whose
5. She went to the bakery .... bought some bread.
   a) but b) so c) and d) because
6. This is the school .... we learn.
   a) which b) where c) when d) who

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. natural - The - beautiful - is - in - Africa - world - .
   ....
2. ecosystem - The Amazon - an important - is - rainforest - .
   ....
3. Island - volcanoes - are - There - many - on Java - .
   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Healthy Habits

Guiding words:

(get up - breakfast - walk - sport - fruit and vegetables - go to bed)

....

....

....

....

TERM (1) PROJECT (1)

Name: Cilantro

الكزبرة

Picture of plant:



Description of plant:

This plant[1] is a herb.
It is usually about 45-50 centimeters tall.
It has a lot of green leaves[2]. The seeds[3] are white or light pink. Bees love them.
The flowers make a lot of small green fruit. Then this fruit turns light brown. These are the seeds which are called coriander.

Where can you find it?

This plant is originally from the area around the Mediterranean Sea. It grows in sunny freshwater[4] ecosystems.

Conservation status:

Cilantro is not endangered.

How people use this plant:

People use the leaves for lots of different things. For example, you can put them in salads[5] or soups.
People also like the leaves with meat and fish.
People use the seeds in food and in traditional medicine. The ancient Egyptians used coriander for different types of medicine, too.

Why I like this plant:

I like this plant because it is delicious[6] and useful. My mom puts it in my favorite salad. I also like the smell of the leaves.

1. نبات
2. أوراق
3. بذور
4. مياه عذبة
5. سلطة
6. لذيذ

NON-FICTION READER

INCREDIBLE PLACES AROUND THE WORLD

Read the listen.

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert, Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

هناك بعض الأماكن المدهشة في جميع أنحاء العالم والتي تكون مشهورة جدا. على سبيل المثال ، نعلم جميعا الصحراء الكبرى وجبل إيفرست وغابات الأمازون المطيرة. هنا نلقي نظرة على بعض الأماكن الرائعة الأخرى التي قد لا تعرفها.

Sharm El Luli - Marsa Alam

شرم اللولي-مرسى علم



Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish. You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.

شاطئ شرم اللولي هو واحد من أجمل الشواطئ على البحر الأحمر. مياهه الزرقاء الصافية تجعله يحظى بشعبية كبيرة لدى السياح. يحب الغواصون أيضا الذهاب إليه لأنه يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأسماك الملونة. يمكنك أحيانا رؤية السلاحف أيضا. يقع الشاطئ على بعد 60 كيلومترا جنوب مرسى علم.

The Giant's Causeway - Northern Ireland

الجسر العملاق-أيرلندا الشمالية

The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!

الجسر العملاق في شمال أيرلندا. يتكون من 40 ألف من أعمدة الصخور السوداء التي ترتفع من البحر. اكتشف العلماء أنها تشكلت عندما ثار بركان قبل 50 أو 60 مليون سنة ، لكن بعض الناس يقولون إن العمالقة صنعوها حتى يتمكنوا من الوصول إلى جزيرة ستافا الاسكتلندية عبر البحر!

Help your child read the text.

The Matterhorn - Switzerland

جبل ماترهورن-سويسرا



Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe. It's 4.478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3.000 people climb the mountain every year.

بعض الناس يقولون إن هذا الجبل هو الأكثر جمالًا في أوروبا. يبلغ ارتفاعه 4478 مترًا على شكل هرم بأربعة جوانب. انه على هذا الشكل بسبب الطريقة التي كوّن بها الثلج تلك الصخور. يتسلق هذا الجبل حوالي 3000 شخص كل عام.

Waimea Canyon - Hawaii, USA

اخدود ويما - هاواي ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية



The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. A river has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep.

جزر هاواي هي جزء من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية ، على الرغم من أنها تبعد اكثر من 7000 كيلومتر في المحيط الهادئ . اخدود ويما هذا مكان رائع. لقد كوّن نهر الوادي الذي يبلغ طوله 16 كيلومترا وعمق 1000 متر تقريبا.

Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

ويما هي كلمة هاواي للمياه الحمراء. يطلق عليه هذا بسبب التربة الحمراء التي تجعل النهر يبدو أحمر.

Cerro Negro - Nicaragua, South America

سيرو نيجرو-نيكاراجوا، أمريكا الجنوبية



Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted for more than 20 years, so it not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top, many people surf back down again!

سيرونيجرو هو بركان في نيكاراجوا ، وثار أكثر من 20 مرة في السنوات الـ 160 الماضية! ومع ذلك ، لم ينفجر لأكثر من 20 عاما ، لذلك ليس خطير عادة. اسمها يعني التل الأسود، وكثير من الناس تسلق منحدراتها السوداء . عندما يصلون إلى أعلى ، كثير من النّاس ينزلقون لأسفل مرة أخرى!

Help your child read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص

NON-FICTION READER

INCREDIBLE BUILDING AROUND THE WORLD

Look and read.

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sydeny Opera House, but every year, people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

نعلم جميعا الأماكن الشهيرة التي من صنع الإنسان حول العالم مثل أهرامات الجيزة ودار أوبرا سيدني ، ولكن كل عام ، يحاول الناس دائما بناء المزيد والمزيد من المباني المذهلة. هنا ننظر إلى بعض الأماكن الأخرى المذهلة التي هي من صنع الانسان والتي قد لا تعرفها.

Bibliotheca Alexandria, Alexandria, Egypt

مكتبة الإسكندرية ، الإسكندرية ، مصر



Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandria has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.

افتتحت مكتبة الإسكندرية الشهيرة في عام 2010 بها مساحة لثمانية ملايين كتاب! مبنى المكتبة الحديث على البحر الأبيض المتوسط هو نفس شكل ميناء الإسكندرية ولها جدار يبلغ ارتفاعه 32 مترا عليه كتابة من اللغات عبر التاريخ.

Habitat 67, Montreal, Canada

مبني هابيتات 67 ، مونتريال ، كندا



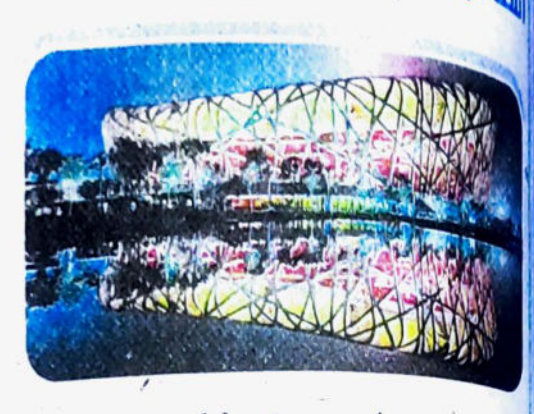
Many of us live in tall apartment buildings where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment buildings! Here, the 148 apartments look like a big children's puzzle! Build in 1967, its apartments all have a terrace with amazing views over the city.

Help your child read the text. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص.

يعيش الكثير منا في عمارات سكنية طويلة حيث يعيش فوقنا وتحتنا الناس. لكن المبنى 67 يختلف كثيرا عن معظم العمارت السكنية! هنا، 148 شقة تبدو وكأنها أحجية أو لعز كبير للأطفال! تم بناء جميع شققها في عام 1967 ، وتحتوي على تراس مع إطلالات مذهلة على المدينة.

Beijing National Stadium, China

استاد بكين الوطني، الصين



There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists! Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some architects, and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call it the Birds Nest because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!

هناك العديد من الاستادات الرياضية المدهشة في جميع أنحاء العالم ، ولكن ليس الكثير منها مصمم من قبل الفنانين! صمم الفنان الصيني آي ويوي استاد بكين للألعاب الأولمبية 2008 مع بعض المهندسين المعماريين, والآن يمكن أن يجتمع فيه 80 ألف شخص لمشاهدة الأحداث الرياضية. يسميه معظم الناس عش الطيور لأنه يبدو وكأنه مكان تضع فيه الطيور بيضها!

Institute for Sound and Vision, the Netherlands

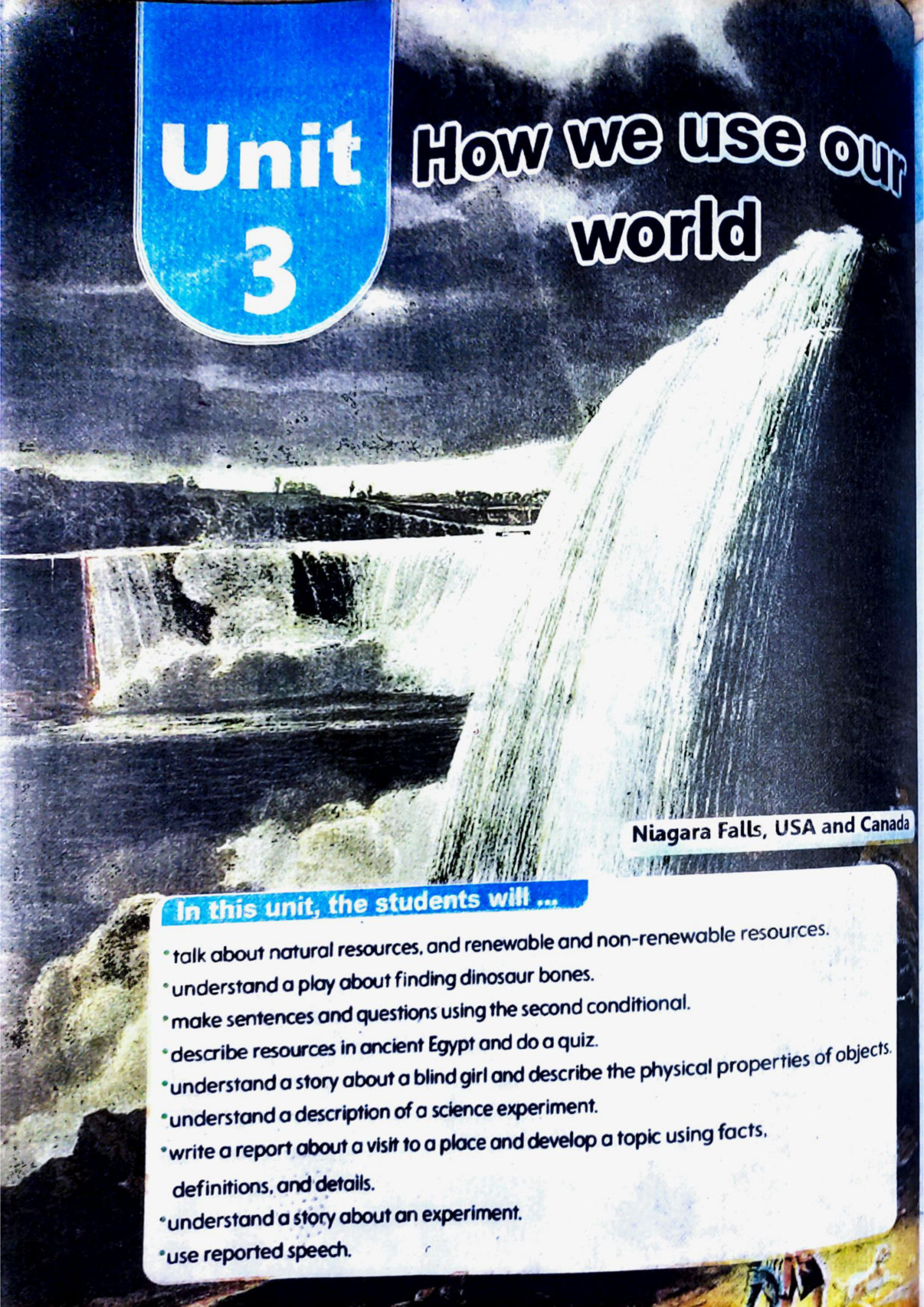
معهد الصوت والرؤية، هولندا



The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glasses. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the media, including television, radio , newspapers and social media.

يحب المهندسون المعماريون لهذا المتحف الألوان! إن بناء معهد الصوت والرؤية مصنوع من مئات من قطع الزجاج الملون. افتتح في عام 2006, المتحف يعلمك كل شيء عن وسائل الإعلام ، بما في ذلك التلفزيون, الإذاعة والصحف ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.


Theme (2) Myself and others



Unit 3 How we use our world

Niagara Falls, USA and Canada

In this unit, the students will ...

- talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources.
- understand a play about finding dinosaur bones.
- make sentences and questions using the second conditional.
- describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz.
- understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects.
- understand a description of a science experiment.
- write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts, definitions, and details.
- understand a story about an experiment.
- use reported speech.

Lesson (1) NATURAL RESOURCES

Look, listen and read.



methane (gas)
غاز الميثان



stone (solid)
حجر



soil (solid)
تربة



cloud (gas)
سحابة



waterfall (liquid)
شلال



water (liquid)
ماء





solid
صلبة

liquid
سائلة

gas
غازية







Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Natural Resources

الموارد الطبيعية

Renewable
متجددة

the sun	الشمس
wind	الرياح
water	الماء

Non-renewable
غير متجددة

coal	فحم
gas	غاز
metal	معدن
stone	حجر
wood	خشب
soil	التربة الزراعية

Extra vocabulary

Marsa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم	materials	مواد	pan	وعاء
journey	رحلة	mine	منجم	sign	
freezer	جهاز التجميد (فريزر)	object	شيء	state	
holiday	إجازة	shape	شكل	steam	
electricity	الكهرباء	pale color	لون باهت	gold	
difference	اختلاف - فرق	container	وعاء	candy	

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
melt	يذوب	melted	melted
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled
turn	يتحول	turned	turned
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
heat	يُسخن	heated	heated
burn	يحرق - يحترق	burned / burnt	burned/ burnt
pour	يصب	poured	poured
flow	يتدفق - يسيل	flowed	flowed

Help your child identify these words.
أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
freeze	يجمد / يتجمد froze	frozen
build	يبني built	built
understand	يفهم understood	understood

Definitions

natural resources	things we can use from nature, like wood and soil	مصادر طبيعية
mine	a place where we get raw materials from the ground	منجم
raw materials	things that come from the ground, like gold and coal	مواد خام
renewable	means we can get more after we use it	متجددة
non-renewable	means we can't use it again	غير متجددة
a solid	has a fixed shape	مادة صلبة
a liquid	doesn't have a fixed shape and it flows	مادة سائلة
a gas	doesn't have a fixed shape and you can't see it	غاز

Important expressions and prepositions

look out of	ينظر من	fixed shape	شكل ثابت
turn from ..... to	يتحول من ... إلى	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
journey to	رحلة إلى	Sukari gold mine	منجم السكري للذهب
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	get warm	يُسخن

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Salma's journeyto Marsa Alam رحلة سلمى إلى مرسى علم

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's a mine,mom?"she asks. "It's a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal."

في الصيف وستذهب سلمى وعائلتها إلى مرسى علم لقضاء عطلة. سلمى تنظر من نافذة السيارة وترى لافتة لمنجم السكري للذهب. تسأل أمها قائلة "ماذا يعني منجم؟". تقول الأم "إنه مكان نحصل فيه على المواد الخام من الأرض، مثل الذهب والفحم".

"Are raw materials the same as natural resources ?" asks Salma.
"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity."

تسأل سلمى "هل المواد الخام هي نفس الموارد الطبيعية؟". تقول الأم "نعم، عادة الموارد الطبيعية هي أشياء يمكننا استخدامها من الطبيعة، مثل الخشب والتربة. نحن نستخدمها لصنع الأشياء التي نحتاجها. على سبيل المثال، نستخدم الخشب لصنع الطاولات والحجر لبناء المنازل والنباتات للطعام. الشمس مورد طبيعي لأنها تعطينا الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء."

"Our teacher says that coal is non- renewable, is that right?"
"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again."

تقول سلمى "يقول معلمنا أن الفحم غير متجدد؟ هل هذا صحيح؟". تقول الأم "نعم بعض الموارد الطبيعية مثل الطاقة الشمسية متجددة-وهذا يعني أنه يمكننا الحصول على المزيد من هذه الموارد بشكل طبيعي بعد استخدامها. لكن بعض الموارد الطبيعية غير قابلة للتجديد. فعندما نحرق الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والغاز، لا يمكننا استخدامه مرة أخرى."

Help your child read about natural resources.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الموارد الطبيعية.

Lesson (1)



"What's the difference between coal and gas?" asks Salma.

"Coal is a solid," says Mom. "You can pick up a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed shape. You can't usually see gases, although some have a pale color. Gases move and change shape.""What about liquids, Mom?"

"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container. Liquids can flow- for example, you can pour water into a cup.

تسأل سلمى امها "ماهو الفرق بين الفحم والغاز". تقول الأم "الفحم صلب". "يمكنك التقاط جسم صلب، مثل حقيبتك لها شكل ثابت. لا يمكنك عادة رؤية الغازات، على الرغم من أن بعضها له لون شاحب. تتحرك الغازات وتغير شكلها." تقول سلمى "ماذا عن السوائل يا أمي؟" تقول الأم "السوائل ليس لها شكل ثابت. لا يمكنك التقاط سائل غير موجود في وعاء. يمكن أن تتدفق السوائل-على سبيل المثال ، يمكنك صب الماء في كوب.

Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another?" says Dad. "If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid again!"

"Yes, we learned that at school!" says Salma. "But I understand it better now. Thanks, Mom and Dad!"

يسأل الأب "هل تعلمي أن بعض المواد الصلبة والسوائل والغازات يمكن أن تتغير من حالة إلى أخرى؟". إذا قمت بغلي الماء السائل ، فإنه يتحول إلى بخار وهو غاز. إذا قمت بتجميد الماء السائل ، فإنه يتحول إلى ثلج صلب. عندما يذوب الجليد ، يصبح سائلا مرة أخرى!" تقول سلمى "نعم، تعلمنا ذلك في المدرسة!" "لكنني أفهم ذلك بشكل أفضل الآن. شكرا ، أمي وأبي"

General Activities

تمارين الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Salma's family are going to .... for a holiday.
   a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Marsa Alam d) Tanta
2. Salma looks out of the .... window.
   a) car b) bus c) taxi d) train
3. Salma sees a sign to the Sukari .... mine.
   a) silver b) gold c) bronze d) metal
4. Mine is a place where we get .... materials.
   a) gas b) solid c) raw d) row

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mine - Marsa Alam - Can - What - When

Mona : Hello, Salma. Where did you go for a holiday?
Salma : I went to 1) ....
Mona : 2) .... did you see?
Salma : I saw the Sukari gold 3) ....
Mona : Did you enjoy your holiday?
Salma : Yes, very much.
Mona : 4) .... I go with you next time?
Salma : Yes, you can.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Solids, liquids, and gases can change from one .... to anoth
   a) state b) star c) base d) type
2. When we .... water, it turns into stea
   a) freeze b) boil c) melt d) drink
3. A .... flo
   a) liquid b) gas c) solid d) stone
4. If you .... water, it turns into
   a) burn b) boil c) heat d) freeze

Help your child deal with such questions.
لطفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. Steam is a ....
   a) solid   b) gas   c) liquid   d) water
6. Ice is a ....
   a) solid   b) stone   c) liquid   d) gas
7. You can pick up a ....
   a) liquid   b) gas   c) solid   d) steam
8. Solids have a .... shape.
   a) changed   b) fixed   c) running   d) melted
9. When you freeze water, it turns from a liquid to a ....
   a) gas   b) solid   c) steam   d) cloud
10. Gold and coal are .... materials.
   a) raw   b) row   c) liquid   d) gas
11. We use .... to make tables.
   a) paper   b) cotton   c) wood   d) water
12. We can burn .... fuels like coal and gas.
   a) fossil   b) fast   c) gold   d) silver
13. .... don't have a fixed shape.
   a) Solids   b) Gases   c) Tables   d) Chairs

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

stream - boiled - froze - ice - steam

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it 1) .... Some of the water turned to 2) .... Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water 3) .... and turned to 4) ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fixed - A solid - shape - has - a - .
....
2. solar - The sun - us - gives - energy - .
....
3. boil - you - When - water, - turns - it - steam - to - .
....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal. Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a) natural resources b) the sun c) stone d) energy

2. .... is a raw material

a) Gold b) Water c) Ice d) Wind

3. The sun is a .... resource

a) normal b) natural c) nature d) wind

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

5. Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural resources

Guiding elements:

(renewable - non-renewable - sun - wind - fossil fuels - solar energy

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE


shovel
جاروف


dig
يحفر


hole
حفرة


bones
عظام

Extra vocabulary

mountain	جبل	gazelle	غزال
dinosaur	ديناصور	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
expert	خبير	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
archaeologists	علماء الآثار	normal	عادي
real	حقيقي	enough	كاف

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل / يتصور	imagined	imagined
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
stay	يقيم / يبقى	stayed	stayed
miss	يفتقد / يفوته	missed	missed
move	يتحرك / ينتقل	moved	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
tell	يخبر	told	told
give	يعطي	gave	given

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

on the ground — على الأرض
take .... home — يأخذ... للمنزل
on the sign — على اللافتة
for a day — لمدة يوم
interested in — مهتم بـ
Egyptian Geological Museum — المتحف الجيولوجي المصري

talk to — يتكلم مع
plan to — يخطط لـ
listen to — يستمع إلى
move to — ينتقل إلى
give to — يعطي لـ
look for — يبحث عن

Read and listen to the play.

Scene 1: Inside a room in Grandpa's house
المشهد 1: داخل غرفة في منزل الجد

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
الجد: ماذا ستفعلون غدا يا أطفال؟

Donia : Tarek and I are going into the mountains with Dad.
دنيا: سأذهب أنا وطارق إلى الجبال مع أبي.

Grandpa : Really? When I was a boy, people told me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
الجد: حقاً؟ عندما كنت صبياً، أخبرني الناس أن هناك عظام ديناصور في الجبال.

Tarek : Real dinosaur bones?
طارق: عظام ديناصور حقيقية؟

Grandpa : I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was digging a hole there and he found some bones.
الجد: أظن ذلك. لم أرهم قط، لكن صديقي علي كان يحفر حفرة هناك ووجد بعض العظام.

Tarek : Wow! Donia, let's take a shovel when we go to the mountains. We might find dinosaur bones too!
طارق: واو! دنيا ، لنأخذ جاروفا عندما نذهب إلى الجبال. قد نجد عظام الديناصورات أيضا!

Scene 2: In the car
المشهد 2: في السيارة

Tarek : What would you do if we found dinosaur bones in the mountains, Donia?
طارق: ماذا ستفعلين إذا وجدنا عظام الديناصورات في الجبال يا دنيا؟

Donia : If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home. If there were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. He's very interested in dinosaurs!

Help your child read and listen to the play.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويستمع إلى المسرحية.

طارق: إذا وجدنا عظام ديناصور ، فسآخذها إلى المنزل. إذا كان هناك الكثير من عظام الديناصورات، فسأعطي واحدة لنجد. إنه مهتم جدًا بالديناصورات!

Donia : Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an expert. If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

دنيا: همم. لا أعرف. أعتقد أننا يجب أن نتصل بخبير. إذا وجدت عظام ديناصور، فسأتصل بالمتحف وأخبرهم.

Tarek : That's a good idea. And if the archaeologists from the museum came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton.

طارق: هذه فكرة جيدة. وإذا جاء علماء الآثار من المتحف ، فربما يجدون هيكل عظمي كامل لديناصور.

Donia : And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

دنيا: وإذا وُضع الهيكل العظمي في المتحف ، فإنهم سيضعون أسمائنا على اللافتة. فقد يكون مكتوبًا عليها "وُجِدَتْ من قِبَلِ دنيا وطارق."

Tarek : Wow! That's cool.

طارق: واو! هذا رائع.

Scene 3 : In the mountains

المشهد 3: في الجبال

Donia : Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.

دنيا: ها هو الجاروف. لنبدأ الحفر.

Tarek digs in the ground.

طارق يحفر في الأرض.

Tarek : Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone?

طارق: انظري! لقد وجدت عظمة يا دنيا! هل هي عظم ديناصور؟

Donia : I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're just animal bones...Maybe a goat or gazelle.

دنيا: لا أعتقد أنها ثقيلة بما يكفي لتكون عظام ديناصور. إنها مجرد عظام حيوانات... ربما عنزة أو غزال.

Tarek : You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only photos!

طارق: أنتِ على حق. لم أرَ قط عظم ديناصور في الحياة الحقيقية. صور فقط!

Dad : Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo soon?

والد: حسنًا ، لماذا لا نزور المتحف المصري الجيولوجي في القاهرة قريبًا؟

Donia : If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

دنيا: اذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف ، فسنرى هياكل عظمية كبيرة للديناصورات.

Tarek : If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

طارق: إذا رأينا هياكل عظمية حقيقية للديناصورات ، فسنعرف ما الذي نبحث عنه في المرة القادمة. هل يمكننا الذهاب غدًا يا أبي؟

Conditional (If)

(لو / إذا) الشرطية

First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage:

We use the first conditional:

⇨ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لوصف أحداث من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

We will see dinosaur bones if we go to the museum.

Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage:

We use the second conditional:

⇨ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية لوصف أحداث نتخيلها ولكن من المحتمل ألا تحدث.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

I would be very surprised if it snowed in October.

Note:

⇨ The comma is important when we start with (If).

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I saw a lion in the street, I .... be afraid.
   a) will b) would c) can d) may
2. If it .... in October, I would be very surprised.
   a) snow b) snows c) snowed d) snowing
3. If we .... a fire, my parents would call the fire service.
   a) see b) sees c) saw d) seeing
4. If we go to the museum, we .... see really big dinosaur skeletons.
   a) would b) could c) might d) will
5. If I .... dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.
   a) find b) found c) finds d) finding
6. If I found a phone on the ground, I .... take it to the police.
   a) will b) may c) can d) would
7. If I .... a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say.
   a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting
8. If we go to the shopping mall on Saturday, I .... buy a new book.
   a) will b) would c) could d) might
9. If she .... much money, she'll help the poor.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
10. We .... play tennis if we had free time.
   a) will b) can c) would d) may

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If I have a lot of money, I .... (would) buy a villa.
2. If I .... (don't) play well, I wouldn't win the match.
3. If she .... (take) medicine, she will recover.
4. If I went to the park, I .... (will) meet my friends.
5. I won't .... (catches) the train if I don't run.
6. If you eat healthy food, you .... (will) get ill.
7. If I .... (have) enough time, I'd play with my brother.

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

digging - shovel - mountains - bones - spoon

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
Donia : We're going into the 1) .... with Dad
Grandpa : Really? When I was a boy, they told me that there were dinosaur 2) .... in the mountains
Tarek : Real dinosaur bones?
Grandpa : I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was 3) .... a hole there and he found some bones.
Tarek : Wow! Donia, let's take a 4) .... when we go to the mountain.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There were dinosaur .... in the mountain
   a) robots b) bones c) tunes d) phones
2. My friend Ali was .... a hole and he found some bones
   a) playing b) drinking c) digging d) reading
3. Grandpa is very interested .... dinosaur
   a) on b) in c) at d) by
4. If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur ....
   a) cycles b) skeletons c) skill d) sky
5. We use a .... to dig
   a) towel b) shovel c) spoon d) ruler
6. I .... play games with my friends if I see them in the park today
   a) would b) will c) could d) might
7. If I .... a lot of money, I would build a home for animals
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
8. If I visited Cairo, I .... go to the Egyptian Geological Museum
   a) will b) would c) may d) can
9. If it was very hot, I would .... at home
   a) stay b) stays c) staying d) stayed

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo. I went with my classmates. We learnt a lot there. We saw really big dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting information about dinosaurs. We spent a nice time there. We took a lot of photos. We came back home at eight o'clock.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We went on a school trip ....
   a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) last week d) last month
2. We came back home at .... o'clock.
   a) 5 b) 7 c) 6 d) 8
3. I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum with my ....
   a) friends b) classmates c) family d) parents

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did you see there? ....
5. How is the museum? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. going - They - are - the - to - mountains - .

....

2. would - do - What - you - you - if - a bike - had - ?

....

3. bones - I - some - dinosaur - found - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go?
- How did you go?
- Who did you go with?
- What did you see?
- How did you find it?
- When did you come back home?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) RESOURCES IN ANCIENT EGY

Key vocabulary

economy	الاقتصاد	fertile	
flax	نبات الكتان (خيوط الكتان)	linen	الكتان
bend	يثني - يلوي	papyrus	بردي

Extra vocabulary

mud	طين	successful	
agriculture	الزراعة	medicine	
jewelry	مجوهرات	mines	
copper	نحاس	tools	
cooking pots	أواني الطهي	limestone	جيري
temples	معابد	hieroglyphics	الهيروغليفية
forests	غابات	problems	
bricks	قوالب طوب	the Eastern Desert	الشرقية
hives	خلايا النحل	The Nile Delta	النيل



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
flood	يفيض	flooded	flooded
turn	يتحول	turned	turned
die	يموت	died	died
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
transport	ينقل	transported	transported

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
sell	sold يبيع	sold
keep	kept يحفظ	kept
build	built يبني	built
bend	bent ينثي - يلوي	bent

Important expressions and prepositions

work **at**	يعمل في	such **as**	مثل
as well **as**	بالإضافة إلى	useful **in**	مفيد في
at first	في البداية	get **out of**	يخرج من
take **from**	يأخذ من		

Listen and read.



Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!

مرحباء اسمي السيد "طه" وأنا أعمل في المتحف. أعلم أن صفك يتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية، لذلك أنا هنا اليوم للحديث عن الموارد في مصر القديمة!

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

هل تعلم أن مصر القديمة كانت ناجحة للغاية لأنها كانت تمتلك موارد طبيعية جيدة؟ كانت الزراعة جزءا مهما جدا من اقتصاد مصر القديمة. فاض النيل كل عام وجعل التربة خصبة. قام المزارعون بزراعة الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة ، مثل القطن والأرز.



Do any of you know what flax is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

هل تعلم ما هو نبات الكتان؟ هذا النبات الطويل له زهور زرقاء. يتحول النبات إلى اللون الأصفر بعد موت الأزهار. الكتان كان مهما في مصر القديمة. استخدمه الناس لصنع الملابس، وكذلك لصنع حبل قوي.

Help your child read about resources in ancient Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الموارد في مصر القديمة.

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt,
and they sold it to other countries, too, People used salt
to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and
agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots
of salt which people could take to use or sell.

ن الملح أيضا موردا مهما جدا في مصر القديمة, وباعوه إلى بلدان أخرى أيضا ، استخدم الناس الملح للحفاظ على الطعام
ازجا, كان مفيدا أيضا في الطب و الزراعة. بعض البحيرات في دلتا النيل بها الكثير من الملح الذي يمكن أن يأخذه الناس
ستخدامه أو بيعه.

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautifu
objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,00
years ago.

البا ما تظهر صور الحياة في مصر القديمة مجوهرات وأشياء جميلة مصنوعة من الذهب! نعتقد أنهم اكتشفوا الذهب منذ
والي ٥٠٠٠ عام.

At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines
to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have
discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

البداية ، وجدوه في الأنهار ، ثم استخدموا المناجم للحصول على المزيد من الأرض. اكتشف علماء الآثار بعض مناجم
هب القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية.

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy
to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots,
and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these
objects today in Egyptian museums.

النحاس معدنا آخر مهما جدا. كان من السهل ثَنْيِه وتشكيله، واستخدمه الناس في صنع الأدوات وأواني الطهي والسكاكين
لك المجوهرات. يمكننا أن نرى الكثير من هذه الأشياء اليوم في المتاحف المصرية.

Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource
in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks
such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build
the pyramids, and many other big and important
buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported
some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

نهاية كانت الحجارة والصخور مورد طبيعي مفيد في مصر القديمة. نظرا لوجود الكثير من الصخور مثل الحجر الجيري
ن بإمكان المصريين القدماء بناء الأهرامات والعديد من المباني والمعابد الكبيرة المهمة الأخرى. نقلت القوارب في نهر
ل بعض الحجارة عبر مصر إلى المدن المهمة.

Lesson (3)

How much do you know about other natural resources in ancient Egypt? Do the quiz.

كم تعرف عن الموارد الطبيعية الأخرى في مصر القديمة؟ قم بحل اللغز.

WHAT IS IT?

1 Egyptians used this to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

استخدم المصريون هذا لصنع الدواء. كان من المهم جدا للمساعدة في مشاكل الجلد أو العيون. هناك كتابات هيروغليفية في المعابد القديمة التي تظهر للناس تربية النحل.

a salt **b** honey **c** milk

2 People used this strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using this.

استخدم الناس هذا النبات القوي لصنع أشياء مثل السلال والصنادل ، لكن أهم شيء صنعوه منه كان الورق. قدم المصريون القدماء بعض الكتب الأولى في العالم باستخدام هذا.

a papyrus **b** dates **c** flax

3 This natural resource wasn't easy to find in ancient Egypt because there weren't many forests. People could get it from other countries.

لم يكن من السهل العثور على هذا المورد الطبيعي في مصر القديمة لأنه لم يكن هناك الكثير من الغابات. يمكن للناس الحصول عليه من بلدان أخرى.

a stone **b** sand **c** wood

4 People in ancient Egypt used this to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

استخدم الناس في مصر القديمة هذا لبناء المنازل والمباني الأخرى. أخذوه من النيل عندما كان لينًا وصنعوا منه طوب مربع الشكل. يصبح الطوب صلب وقوى عندما يجف.

a mud **b** gold **c** coal

Help your child do the quiz.

ساعد طفلك في حل اختبار المعلومات.

...eral Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... used honey to make medi...
   a) Egyptians b) French c) British d) Chinese
2. Honey was very ....
   a) unimportant b) important c) useless d) harmful
3. Honey helped with the problems of skin and ....
   a) legs b) hands c) eyes d) heads
4. People in Ancient Egypt kept ....
   a) ducks b) hens c) geese d) bees

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Taha works .... the museu...
   a) on b) of c) by d) at
2. Ancient Egypt was very .... because it had good natural resourc...
   a) success b) successful c) succeed d) succeeding
3. Agriculture was a very important part of ....
   a) colony b) economy c) economic d) industry
4. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil ....
   a) bad b) fertile c) weak d) ugly
5. People used .... to make line...
   a) flax b) papyrus c) cotton d) rice
6. People used salt to keep food ....
   a) bad b) sad c) fresh d) old
7. Copper is a metal. It is easy to ....
   a) flow b) bend c) build d) eat
8. People put bees in houses called ....
   a) knives b) wives c) hives d) lives
9. Honey was used to make ....
   a) medicine b) plants c) tools d) wax
10. People in ancient Egypt used .... to build houses and other buildings.
    a) mud b) gold c) coal d) flax

Help your child deal with such questions.
...طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is the ....
   a) pyramid b) honey c) money d) Nile
2. Bees live in houses called ....
   a) hotels b) flats c) hives d) holes
3. Honey wasn't ....
   a) expensive b) cheap c) important d) useful

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How did people use honey as a medicine? ....
5. Why did people move the hives along the Nile? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. flooded - the soil - The Nile - fertile - made - and - .

....

2. used - flax - People - make - to - linen - .

....

3. Egypt - very - Ancient - successful - was - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Honey

Guiding elements:

(bees - food - sweet - medicine - cut - flowers)

Key vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
soft	ناعم / لين / طري	mass	كتلة
hard	قاس / جامد	light	خفيف
sticky	لاصق / لزج	heavy	ثقيل
rough	خشن	comfortable	مريح
gas	غاز	odor	رائحة
liquid	سائل	texture	ملمس / نسيج / قماش
solid	صلب	blind	أعمى / كفيف

Extra vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
excited	متحمس / مسرور	stone	حجر
lovely	جميل	smooth	ناعم / أملس
fingers	أصابع اليد	amazing	مذهل
object	شيء	kitchen	مطبخ
wooden	خشبي	honey	عسل
carefully	بحرص / بعناية	kind	نوع



Definitions

Word	Definition	Meaning
blind	can't see	أعمى / كفيف
odor	the smell of something	رائحة
mass	describes how heavy something is	كتلة
texture	this is the feel of something	الملمس

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
arrive	يصل arrived	arrived
pick	يلتقط picked	picked
close	يغلق closed	closed
touch	يلمس touched	touched

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
come	يأتي	came	come
say	يقول	said	said
feel	يشعر / له ملمس	felt	felt
know	يعرف	knew	known
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt
bend	يثني - يلوي	bent	bent

Important expressions and prepositions

arrive from	يصل من ...	good at	جيد في
welcome to	مرحبًا بك في	learn from	يتعلم ... من
walk around	يتجول حول	ask for	يطلب
sounds fun	يبدو ممتعًا	play with	يلعب مع
get .... from	يُحضِر .... من	put down	يضع
ping-pong ball	كرة تنس الطاولة		

Listen and read.



Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind, which means she cannot see.


منى سعيدة لأن ابنة عمها هبة وصلت للتو من الإسكندرية. هبة كفيفه، والذي يعني أنها لا تستطيع الرؤية.

"Hello, Heba. Come in!" says Mona. "Welcome to my house. This is the living room." Heba walks around the room and feels some of the things. "It's a lovely room," she says. "How do you know?" asks Mona.

تقول منى "مرحبا ، هبة. ادخلي!". "مرحبا بكم في بيتي. هذه هي غرفة المعيشة." تتجول هبة في الغرفة وتتلمس بعض الأشياء. تقول: "إنها غرفة جميلة". تسألها منى "كيف يمكنك أن تعرفي؟".

"Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its texture. So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old

wooden table." "How do you know it's old and wooden?"
"The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. That means I can smell the wood.

"حسنا ، عندما تمرر أصابعك على شيء ما ، يمكنك أن تشعر بملمسه. لذلك ، أعلم أن لديك كراسي ناعمة ومريحة. وأنا أحب طاولتك الخشبية القديمة." تسألها منى "كيف يمكنك أن تعرف أنها قديمة وخشبية؟" وتجيب هبة "الخشب القديم خشن وله رائحة أيضا. هذا يعني أنني أستطيع شم رائحة الخشب.

"Heba picks up a ping pong ball. "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy,"

"You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more."


"هبة تلتقط كرة تنس الطاولة. "وأنا أعرف أن هذا كرة وليست حجرا بسبب كتلتها. انها خفيفة ، لكن الحجر ثقيل."

تقول منى "أنت مذهلة يا هبة!". "أحب تعلم المزيد."

"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"

"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table.

"يمكننا أن نلعب لعبة. أولا ، سأطلب من العمة ليلى أن تحضر لي بعض الأشياء من المطبخ. يجب أن لا تنظري! ثم أغمضي عينيك. هل يمكن أن تخبريني ما هي الأشياء؟" تقول والدة منى "هذا يبدو ممتعا!". إنها تضع بعض الأشياء على الطاولة.

Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana. "It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"

تغلق منى عينيها. أولا ، تلتقط موزة ناعمة. تقول منى: "ليس الأمر صعبا". "يمكنني ثنيها ، ولها رائحة. هل هي موزة؟"

"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully "Oh, it's soft and smooth, and it's sticky. Is it honey?" asks Mona. "That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!"

تقول هبة "نعم!". "الآن المسي هذا بعناية" تقول منى "أوه، انه ناعم ولزج. هل هو عسل؟" تقول هبة "هذا صحيح! أنت جيدة في هذه اللعبة يا منى!"

"Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!"
"I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" says Heba.

"شكرا يا هبة. أعلم أنني سأتعلم منك الكثير أثناء وجودك هنا!"

تقول هبة "أنا متأكدة من أنني سأتعلم الكثير منكِ أيضا!".

Help your child read a story about a blind girl.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة عن فتاة كفيفة.

Lesson (4)

Physical properties & adjectives

Physical property		Adjective to describe texture	
mass	solid	sticky	comfortable
odor	liquid	soft	hard

Look and read about the physical properties of objects.


chair

- It's a solid. It's hard. It's made of wood.
You can't bend it. You can sit on it.


oxygen

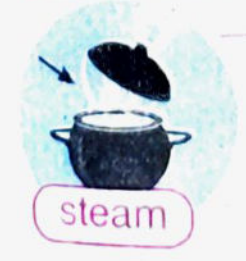
- It's a gas. It's in the air. It doesn't have a color.
People need this.


ice cream

- It's a solid. It's soft. You eat it.
It's very cold. If it gets warm, it melts.


olive oil

- It's a liquid. It's yellow. You can pour it onto food or you can cook with it.


steam

- It's a gas. It has no color, and it's hot. You see it when you boil water.


milk

- It's a liquid. It's white. You drink it or cook with it.
You can add it to coffee.

Help your child describe the physical properties of objects.
ساعد طفلك أن يصف الخصائص الفيزيائية للأشياء.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mona and Haba are in the ....
   a) living room b) kitchen c) garden d) bedroom
2. Mona's .... got something from the kitchen.
   a) father b) mom c) brother d) aunt
3. Heba asks Mona to close ....
   a) the door b) the window c) her eyes d) her hands
4. Mona picks up a soft ....
   a) guava b) fig c) tomato d) banana

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " means a person who can't see.
   a) Deaf b) Dumb c) Blind d) Weak
2. The smell of something is its ....
   a) door b) odor c) mass d) texture
3. Glue feels ....
   a) rough b) hard c) sticky d) stick
4. The elephant has a large .... It's very big.
   a) mass b) odor c) texture d) smell
5. Oxygen is a ....
   a) solid b) liquid c) gas d) soft
6. Olive oil is a .... It's yellow.
   a) solid b) gas c) liquid d) hard
7. .... is a gas. It has no color.
   a) Milk b) Steam c) Chair d) Water
8. This soft chair is ....
   a) bad b) rough c) hard d) comfortable
9. Honey is sweet and ....
   a) hard b) bad c) sticky d) rough
10. A chair is a solid. It's ....
    a) soft b) hard c) sticky d) light

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind. She can't see. Mona welcomes Heba to her house. Heba walks around the room and feels the texture of the chairs. They are comfortable. The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. Heba picks up a ping pong ball. She knows this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Heba is ....
   a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) sad
2. The underlined word "excited" means ....
   a) sad b) happy c) funny d) kind
3. The chairs are ....
   a) comfortable b) uncomfortable c) boring d) useless

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is Mona excited? ....
5. How does the old wood feel? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. glue - is - The - sticky - .

....

2. to - my - Welcome - house - .

....

3. chairs - are - What - the - like - ?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A description of a strawberry

Guiding questions:

- Is it a solid or a liquid?
- Does it have an odor?
- What kind of texture does it have?
- What color is it?
- Is it hard or soft?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (5) A SCIENCE EXPERIMENT



Key vocabulary

glass jar	برطمان زجاجي	syringe	محقنة (سرنجة)
honey	عسل	milk	حليب
water	ماء	maple syrup	شراب القيقب
vegetable oil	زيت نباتي	dish detergent	منظف الأطباق



Extra vocabulary

different	مختلفة	container	وعاء - حاوية
groups	مجموعات	sticky	لزج - لاصق
thick	سميك	layer	طبقة
separate	منفصل	amounts	كميات
coin	عملة معدنية	side	جانب
mass	كتلة	slowly	ببطء



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
pour	يصب	poured	poured
mix	يختلط / يمزج	mixed	mixed
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
add	يضيف	added	added
float	يطفو	floated	floated
wonder	يتساءل - يتعجب	wondered	wondered

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (5)

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
do	يفعل	did	done
sink	يغوص	sank	sunk
make	يصنع	made	made
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
let	يسمح / يدع	let	let

Important expressions and prepositions

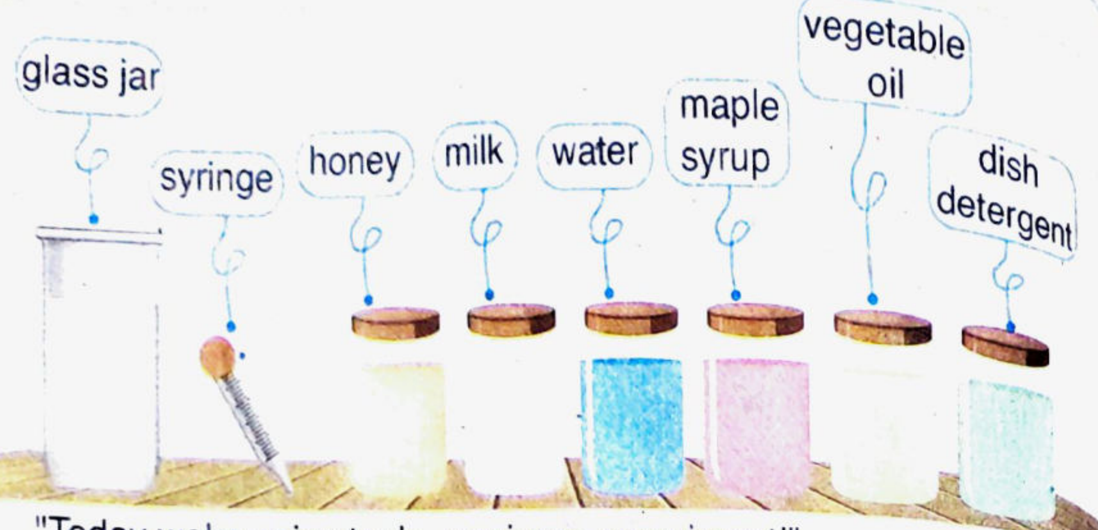
Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
do experiment	يجري تجربة	mix together	يختلط سويا
find out	يكتشف	give out	يوزع
float on top	تطفو (لأعلى / على السطح)	pour in	يصب في
mix with	يختلط بـ	in the centre	في المنتصف
at the end	في النهاية	carry on	يستمر
go through	يذهب عبر (خلال)	in the first	في البداية



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.



"Today we're going to do a science experiment!" said Mrs Hend." What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"

"اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية!" قالت ميس هند."ماذا يحدث عندما نسكب سوائل مختلفة في وعاء واحد؟"

"I think they mix together," said Amir. " Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend.

قال أمير:" أعتقد أنها تختلط معا". قالت ميس هند "دعونا نكشف!"

Mrs Hend had some small jars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent. She also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.

كان لدى ميس هند بعض البرطمانات الصغيرة التي تحتوي على هذه السوائل: العسل والحليب والماء وشراب القيقب والزيت النباتي ومنظف الأطباق. كان لديها أيضا بعض البرطمانات الزجاجية الطويلة ومحقنة بلاستيكية. وزعت هذه الأشياء إلى مجموعات من الأطفال. ثم أوضحت لهم ما يجب القيام به.

"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar". Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick. "Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."

"أولا، صب العسل ببطء. لا تدعه يلمس جانب البرطمان".
سكب أمير وطارق العسل فيه. كان لزجًا وسميكًا. "بعد ذلك ، صب ببطء في شراب القيقب."

Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a layer on top of the honey."Look!" said Tarek " It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top."

لاحظ أمير وطارق أن شراب القيقب لم يكن سميكا مثل العسل. عندما سكبوه، كوّن الشراب طبقة فوق العسل. قال طارق "انظر! لم يختلط مع العسل. انه على القمة."

Help your child read about a science experiment.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تجربة علمية.

Lesson (5)

"Use the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the centre. Then do the same with dish detergent", said Mrs Hend.

قالت ميس هند "استخدم المحقنة لوضع الحليب ببطء فوق الشراب في المنتصف. ثم افعل الشيء نفسه مع منظف الأطباق".

Amir and Tarek added the milk. It made a white layer on top of the syrup.

أضاف أمير وطارق الحليب. وهذا كون طبقة بيضاء أعلى الشراب.

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek carried on adding liquids in very slowly. At the end, their jar had six separate layers in.

ثم أضافوا منظف الأطباق. ثم استخدموا حقنة لجعل الماء والزيت النباتي ينساب على جوانب البرطمان.
استمر أمير وطارق في إضافة السوائل ببطء شديد. في النهاية، كان بالبرطمان ست طبقات منفصلة.

"Well done!" said Mrs Hend." Why do you think that happened?"
"Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?" asked Amir.

قالت ميس هند "أحسنتم!". "لماذا تعتقد أن هذا حدث؟"
سأل أمير "هل لأن هناك كميات مختلفة من السوائل؟".

"No, Amir, We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

تقول ميس هند "لا يا أمير. كان لدينا نفس الكمية، لكن السوائل جميعها لها كتلة مختلفة. تغوص السوائل الأثقل في القاع.
السوائل ذات الكتلة الأقل تطفو في الأعلى!"

☑ Look and tick.

Object	floats	sinks	light	heavy
a coin				
a ping pong ball				
a tomato				
a button				
a stone				
honey				
an eraser				

Help your child read about a science experiment.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تجربة علمية.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mix - do - experiment - pour - did

Amir : Do you like science?
Tarek : Yes, I do.
Amir : What are you going to 1) ....?
Tarek : I'm going to do a science 2) ....
Amir : What happens when we 3) .... different liquids into a container?
Tarek : I think they 4) .... together.
Amir : Let's find out!
Tarek : OK.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today we're going to .... a science experiment.
   a) play b) do c) make d) eat
2. We pour different liquids into a ....
   a) bag b) container c) paper d) carpet
3. Mom uses dish .... to wash the dishes.
   a) detergent b) agent c) determine d) honey
4. Honey is .... and thick.
   a) solid b) hard c) sticky d) bad
5. When we put milk into the container, it made a white .... on top of the syrup.
   a) foam b) piece c) layer d) bar
6. Doctors use a .... with patients.
   a) needle b) syringe c) range d) ruler
7. Milk is a ....
   a) gas b) solid c) liquid d) water
8. Heavy objects .... to the bottom.
   a) float b) sink c) think d) fly
9. If you put an eraser on water, it ....
   a) sinks b) flies c) thinks d) floats
10. I'd like to drink maple ....
   a) food b) syrup c) oil d) honey

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I'm in primary five. I walk to school. I go to school five times a week. I like science a lot. It's a very interesting subject. Today we're going to do a science experiment! What happens when we pour different liquids into one container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali goes to school ....
   a) by car   b) by bus   c) by train   d) on foot
2. Ali goes to school .... times a week.
   a) 3   b) 4   c) 5   d) 6
3. The heavier liquids .... to the bottom.
   a) fly   b) sink   c) float   d) think

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are they going to do today? ....
5. Why does Ali like science a lot? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - Honey - sticky - thick - and - .

....

2. sink - The - liquids - bottom - heavier - the - to - .

....

3. are - water - Milk - liquids - and - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A science Experiment

Guiding elements:

(science - coin - liquid - put - sink - mass)

....

....

Lesson (6) WRITING A REPORT



Key vocabulary

tunnel	نفق	waterfalls	شلالات
flamingo	البشروس / طائر الفلامنجو	coastline	خط الساحل

Extra vocabulary

sound	صوت	orchards	بساتين
oasis	واحة	popular	شعبي / محبوب
facts	حقائق	history	تاريخ
details	تفاصيل	port	ميناء
the Mediterranean	البحر الأبيض المتوسط		



Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
include	يتضمن	included	included

Important expressions and prepositions

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	safe to	آمن لـ
at the bottom	في القاع	at the top	القمة
have fun	يمرح	on vacation	أجازة
It's time to...	حان الوقت لـ...	famous for	مشهور بـ

Help your child identify these words.

طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

شلالات وادي الريان

Report by Wael Mahdi

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom . The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud.
We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well!

في الأسبوع الماضي ، ذهب فصلنا في رحلة إلى الشلالات في وادي الريان. كان شيئًا جميلًا! هناك بحيرتان: واحدة في الجزء العلوي من الشلالات وواحدة في الأسفل . يبلغ ارتفاع الشلالات ٦٧ مترا ، لذا فإن صوت سقوط الماء مرتفع جدا. لم نتمكن من سماع معلمنا وهو يتحدث بشكل جيد للغاية!

We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

علمنا أن الماء يأتي من واحة في الصحراء. الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء به ماء. ينتقل الماء ثمانية كيلومترات من الواحة إلى البحيرة عبر نفق.

Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo.

أخبرنا معلمنا أيضا أن هناك الكثير من الطيور المختلفة التي تعيش هناك. رأينا بعض الطيور وكان المفضل لدي هو طائر الفلامنجو.

Then it was time to have some fun. We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after a long day.

ثم حان الوقت للحصول على بعض المتعة. قفزنا إلى البحيرة السفلية وذهبنا للسباحة. من الآمن السباحة هناك ، وقد ساعدنا ذلك على الاسترخاء بعد يوم طويل.

Help your child read a report about a school trip.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ تقريرًا عن رحلة مدرسية.

Listen and read.

Damietta: A report by Gameela Hassan



Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation.

دمياط هي مدينة على ساحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط لمصر. لها خط ساحلي طويل، وجميل وكثير من الناس يحبون الذهاب إلى هناك في الإجازة.

Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center.

جزيرة رأس البر هي واحدة من أكثر الأماكن شعبية للإقامة هناك. وهناك أيضا العديد من الحدائق الجميلة والبساتين لرؤيتها. البساتين هي الأماكن التي تزرع فيها أشجار الفاكهة. دمياط هي أيضا ميناء مزدحم ومركز صيد مهم.

It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries.

بها أكبر عدد من قوارب الصيد في مصر. إنها مكان مهم للزراعة أيضا. الزراعة هي ممارسة الزراعة. تزرع المحاصيل مثل الأرز والفواكه والقطن وأشجار النخيل هنا للشعب المصري وأيضا لبيعها إلى بلدان أخرى.

Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

دمياط مدينة مزدحمة ذات تاريخ مشهور ولكنها أيضا مدينة جميلة وحديثة. أود حقا زيارة دمياط يوما ما.

Help your child read a report about a school t

طفلك أن يقرأ تقريرًا عن رحلة مدرسية.

How to write a report

You should include facts, details, and definitions about the place you visited in your report.

◊ **Do research to make notes.**

A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

1- Where is the place? **2- What did you do there?**

3- What things, people, or animals did you see there?

4- Why did you enjoy your visit?

A model report

Last week, our class went on a trip to Luxor. It was beautiful. There are many temples there. Al Karnak Temple is the most famous one there. We learned about the Valley of the Kings. It was fantastic. Our teacher told us that there were a lot of things to do there. There are many ancient sites to see there. I enjoyed my trip because it was fun and interesting.

◊ **Look and write a report about your trip to "The Pyramids".**



....

....

....

....

....

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

enjoy - flamingo - went - waterfalls - go

Wael : Where did your class go last week?

Amr : They 1) .... to Wadi EL-Rayan.

Wael : What did you see there?

Amr : The 2) .... They are 67 meters high.

Wael : What birds did you see there?

Amr : I saw the 3) ....

Wael : Did you 4) .... your trip?

Amr : Yes, we did.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last week we went .... a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El-Rayan.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
2. A/An .... is a place in the desert with water.
   a) lake b) oasis c) park d) island
3. My favorite .... is the flamingo.
   a) animal b) bird c) oasis d) thing
4. Damietta has a long and beautiful .... on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a) animal b) bird c) oasis d) coastline
5. In Damietta there are many beautiful gardens and .... to see.
   a) oceans b) orchards c) lakes d) buds
6. Many people like to go to Damietta .... vocations.
   a) on b) in c) at d) of
7. Damietta is a .... city with a famous history.
   a) lazy b) busy c) tall d) bad
8. Agriculture is the practice of ....
   a) playing b) running c) swimming d) farming

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center. It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) Damietta b) Egypt c) orchards d) port
2. Ras El-Bar island is one of the most .... places to stay there.
   a) funny b) popular c) expensive d) boring
3. Many people like to go to Damietta on ....
   a) Saturday b) foot c) vacation d) a bus

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are orchards? ....
5. What is Damietta famous for? ....

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go?
- How did you go?
- What did you see?
- What could you do there?
- Why did you enjoy there?

....

....

....

Lesson (7)

Read the story.

"OK, students" said Mrs Hend. "Today we're going to do a science experiment.

You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."

قالت الأستاذة هند "حسنا أيها الطلاب". "اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية.
يمكنكم العمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة طلاب. يوجد جسم صلب في صندوق واحد ، ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر.
عليكم دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة."

Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara" Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

كانت لارا تجلس بمفردها ، لكن ريم ودينا كانتا تجلسان أمامها. استدارت ريم وتحدثت إلى لارا قائلة" يا لارا ، الأستاذة هند
قالت أننا يمكن أن نعمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة. هل تودين العمل معنا؟

"Oh, yes please," said Lara happily. The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks. "OK" said Dina, "What do we need to do?"

قالت لارا بسعادة:" أوه ، نعم من فضلك". جلست الفتيات معا ، وأخرجوا أقلامهم ودفاترهم.
قالت دينا "حسنا". " ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟"

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box and a container of liquid in another box." "That's right" said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions." " Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

نظرت لارا إلى ملاحظاتها قائلة. "قالت الأستاذة هند كان هناك جسم صلب في صندوق ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر.
قالت ريم "هذا صحيح" : "قالت إنه كان علينا دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة." قالت دينا "عظيم، دعونا نبدأ!".

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Reported speech

e.g. He said, " I play the guitar well". (Direct)

He said that he played the guitar well". (Reported)

The steps

❶ said ⟶ said said to ⟶ told

❷ We omit " " and put that or (we can omit "that").

❸ يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب:

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

❹ يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالي إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا وتبقى كما هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا:

أسماء الإشارة		التعبيرات الزمنية		التعبيرات الزمنية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
this	that	today	that day	tonight	that night
these	those	tomorrow	the following day	now	then
ظرف المكان		yesterday	the day before	ago	before
here	there	last week	the week before		

5 We change the tenses like this with (said / told):

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
am / is	was	can	could
are	were	will	would
have / has	had	may	might

6 تحويل الأزمنة:

الأزمنة

Direct Speech		Reported Speech
Present Simple	⟶	Past Simple

e.g. Walaa said "I like English."

Walaa said that she liked English.

Present Continuous	⟶	Past Continuous

e.g. Ali said to me "I am watching TV."

Ali told me he was watching TV.

Past Simple	⟶	Past Simple / Past Perfect

e.g. Ahmed said "I saw a bird."

Ahmed said he saw / had seen a bird.

Modals	⟶	Past Modals

e.g. She said "I will travel tomorrow."

She said she would travel the following day.

e.g. He said "I can swim."

He said he could swim.

Help your child use reported speech.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر.

Lesson (7)

1 Choose the correct word(s).

1. Mona said she .... playing tennis.
   a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
2. Ali said he sometimes .... eggs for breakfast.
   a) had b) have c) having d) has
3. Khaled said he .... swim.
   a) can b) will c) may d) could
4. Amr said he .... be ready to carry things.
   a) is b) will c) can d) would
5. Mazen said it .... hot and sunny.
   a) is b) are c) was d) can
6. Omar said, "I .... ride a bike.".
   a) can b) am c) are d) have

2 Choose the correct word(s).

1. "Dina .... animals," said Mom.
   a) love b) loves c) is loving d) loving
2. "I .... play the guitar." said Noha.
   a) can b) could c) am d) would
3. Shady said Mr Ahmed .... in Alexandria.
   a) work b) working c) works d) worked
4. Eman said she .... cooking with her Mom.
   a) liking b) like c) liked d) likes
5. Mona said it .... cold and rainy.
   a) is b) was c) are d) were
6. Aya said she .... to visit the park.
   a) want b) wanting c) wants d) wanted

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. He said he .... (can) swim.
2. She said she .... (play) tennis.
3. Wael .... (says) his favourite lesson was science.
4. Ali said he .... (will) come early.
5. Rola said she .... (go) to school.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today we're going to do a science ....
   a) complement b) experiment c) expert d) survey
2. You can work in .... of three.
   a) groups b) classes c) herds d) boxes
3. There is a .... object in one box.
   a) liquid b) solid c) gas d) steam
4. You have to study and .... some questions.
   a) ask b) answer c) delete d) wonder

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Would you like to work .... us?
   a) at b) by c) with d) on
2. Water is a ....
   a) solid b) liquid c) gas d) stone
3. He said he .... play the guitar.
   a) can b) could c) will d) may
4. Amira said she .... to the library on Mondays.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
5. Mariam said she .... visiting the park.
   a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
6. Fares said he .... going to play football after school.
   a) is b) was c) has d) are
7. Mona said, "I .... to the park."
   a) go b) goes c) going d) to go
8. Ziad said, "I .... swim."
   a) am b) can c) had d) have
9. Magdy said, "I .... money."
   a) needs b) need c) needed d) needing
10. Mom said it .... hot and sunny.
    a) is b) are c) were d) was

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Mazen. I'm in primary five. I like my school very much. Science is my favorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the Science Museum. We learned a lot about the environment and saw a lot of things. We enjoyed our time there. It was a very exciting trip. I talked to my class about this visit.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Science is a ....
   a) sport b) food c) subject d) season
2. .... is Mazen's favorite lesson.
   a) English b) Science c) Arabic d) History
3. Mazen likes his .... very much.
   a) club b) street c) bike d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did Mazen go yesterday? ....
5. What did they learn about? ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. to - you - need - Do - a calculator - borrow - ?

....

2. visiting - like - I - park - the - .

....

3. a science - do - Let's - experiment - .

....

4. said - it - Mom - cold - was - rainy - and - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go?
- How did you go?
- Who did you go with?
- What did you see?
- Why did you enjoy the trip?



Natural resources

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. We use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity. Some natural resources are renewable, but other natural resources are non-renewable such as coal and gas.

Resources in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice. They used flax to make linen for clothes. Stones and rocks were useful natural resources in ancient Egypt. They could build the Pyramids and temples.

Honey

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees. Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. People used it to make food taste sweet. They put bees in houses called hives.

Wadi El Rayan waterfalls

Last week our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there. The sound of water falling is very loud. We learned that water comes from an oasis in the desert. It is a place in the desert with water. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo. We had fun and it was a fantastic day.

Help your child write a paragraph. طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.

Review on Unit (3)

Natural resources موارد طبيعية

Word	Meaning
coal	فحم
fertile	خصيب
mud	طين
raw materials	مواد خام
date	بلح
flax	نبات الكتان
pale	شاحب اللون
economy	الاقتصاد
linen	قماش الكتان
mine	منجم

States of water حالات الماء

Word	Meaning
liquid	سائل
boil	يغلي
fixed shape	شكل ثابت
solid	صلب
freeze	يتجمد
gas	غاز
melt	يذوب

Physical properties خصائص فيزيائية

Word	Meaning
bend	يطوي
odor	رائحة
sticky	لزج - لاصق
hard	خشن - صلب
rough	خشن
texture	نسيج
mass	الكتلة
soft	ناعم

Stories قصص

Word	Meaning
dig	يحفر
sink	يغطس / يغوص
skeleton	هيكل عظمي
flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو
shovel	جاروف
expert	خبير
hole	حفرة
tunnel	نفق

First Conditional

Form: If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage: We use the first conditional:

⇨ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

Second Conditional

Form: If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage: We use the second conditional:

⇨ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.



Reported speech

Direct speech

الكلام المباشر

The words that a person says.

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

Reported speech

الكلام الغير المباشر (الكلام المنقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

Notice the changes

لاحظ التغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

1. Change the subject according to the speaker.
2. Change the verb from present to past.
3. We don't use speech marks.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

حجر	غاز الميثان	
سحابة	تربة	
ماء	شلال	

Lesson (2)

يحفر	جاروف	
عظام	حفرة	

Lesson (3)

خصبة	الاقتصاد	
قماش الكتان	نبات الكتان (خيوط الكتان)	
ورق البردي	يثني - يلوي	

Lesson (4)

كتلة	ناعم / لين / طري	
خفيف	قاسٍ / جامد	
ثقيل	لاصق / لزج	
مُريح	خشن	
رائحة	غاز	
ملمس / نسيج / قماش	سائل	
أعمى / كفيف	صلب	

Lesson (5)

محقنة (سرنجة)	برطمان زجاجي	
حليب	عسل	
شراب القيقب	ماء	
منظف الأطباق	زيت نباتي	

Lesson (6)

شلالات	نفق	
خط الساحل	البشروس / طائر الفلامنجو	

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People in ancient Egypt used .... to build houses and other buildings.
   a) mud b) gold c) coal d) sand
2. They took mud from the .... when it was soft.
   a) lake b) Nile c) ocean d) sea
3. They made mud into square ....
   a) picks b) bricks c) chicks d) luck
4. The bricks were hard and .... when they dried.
   a) wrong b) strong c) weak d) soft

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

enjoy - visited - train - Alexandria - play

Ali : Where did you go last weekend?
Omar : I went to 1) ....
Ali : How did you go there?
Omar : By 2) ....
Ali : What did you do?
Omar : I 3) .... Alexandria Library.
Ali : Did you 4) .... your time?
Omar : Yes, I did.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Nada. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting place to live. It's quiet and comfortable. I can do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much, but I have a big problem. The traffic is always busy on my way to school, so I sometimes go to school late. It takes me an hour to reach school. There are many places to visit in this city.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities On Unit (3)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nada lives in a big ....
   a) village b) house c) palace d) city
2. The underlined word "late" means not ....
   a) small b) early c) big d) young
3. It takes Nada .... hour to reach school.
   a) four b) three c) two d) one

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the big problem Nada has?

....

5. How is Nada's city?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The dugong was called "Donga". ☐
2. Donga lives in the mangrove forest. ☐
3. The Nubian ibex lives in Hill Elba. ☐
4. Gebel Elba was very steep for Subira's legs. ☐

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari came to .... Nasser.
2. Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hani said that he .... pizza.
   a) eat b) eats c) will eat d) ate
2. If I have money, I .... buy a car.
   a) will b) would c) could d) might
3. What would you do if you .... a lot of money?
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
4. If you studied hard, you .... succeed.
   a) will b) would c) may d) can
5. Fareeda said she .... swim well.
   a) can b) will c) may d) could
6. If she .... to the museum, she'll see dinosaur bones.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) will go

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - Coal - gas - and - resources - non-renewable - .

....

2. linen - make - People - flax - from - .

....

3. liked - honey - Who - ancient - in - Egypt - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Papyrus

Guiding elements:

(Ancient Egypt - used - plant - baskets - paper - books)

....

....

....

Unit 4

We're on the move

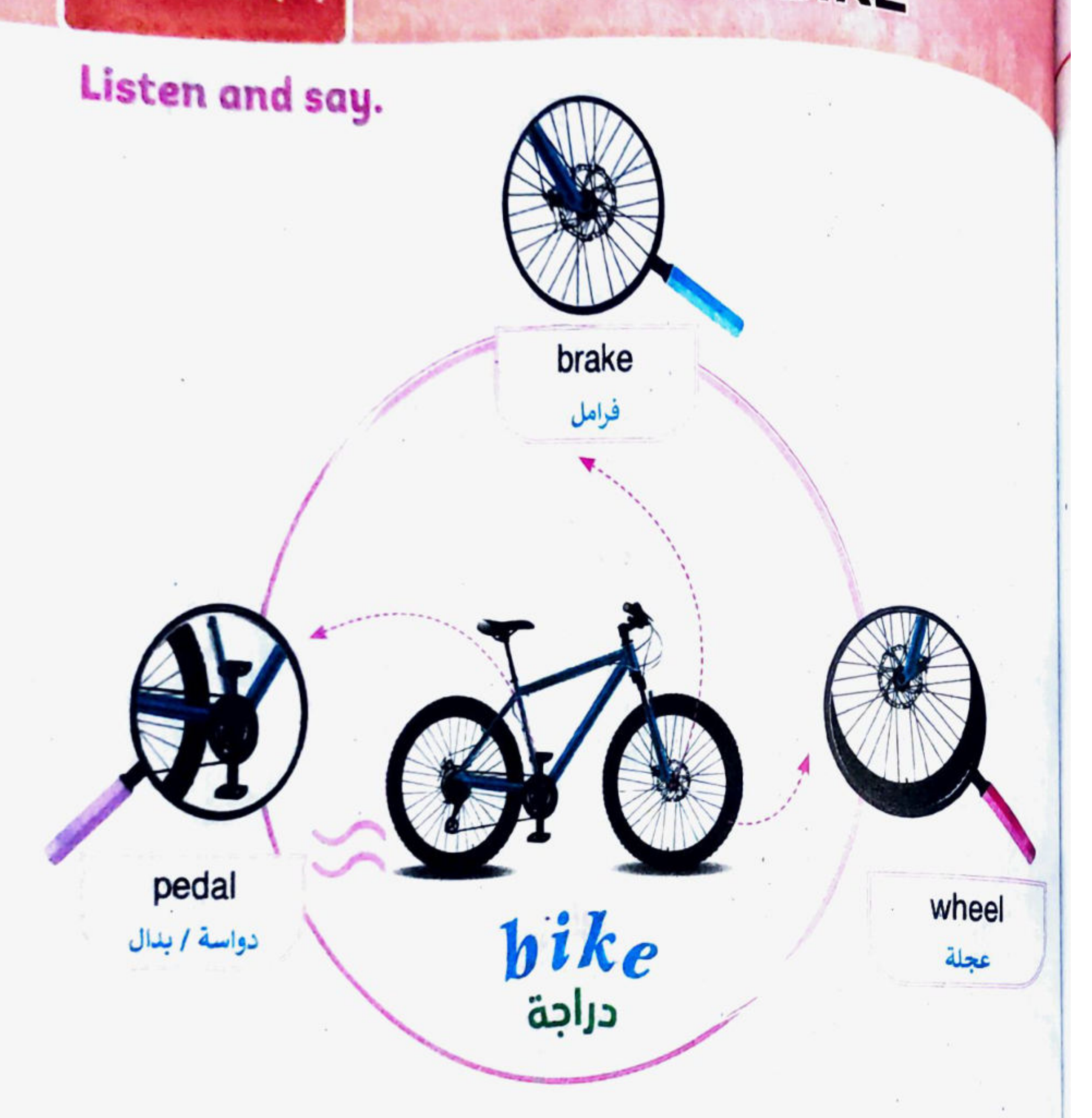
A roller coaster in Egypt

In this unit, the students will ...

- explore how bikes move.
- identify, understand, and use question tags.
- read and follow instruction for making two different paper airplanes.
- read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity.
- understand blogs about jobs in science.
- write an email using sequencing words.
- understand a story about the first man to fly.

Lesson (1) MY NEW BIKE

Listen and say.



Extra vocabulary

cycling	ركوب الدراجات	grandparents	الأجداد
push force	قوة الدفع	hill	تل
pull force	قوة السحب	transportation	وسائل مواصلات
speed	سرعة	safe places	أماكن آمنة
science lesson	حصة العلوم	cupboard	دولاب / خزانة
parents	الوالدان		

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
push	يدفع (للأمام)	pushed	pushed
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
stop	يوقف	stopped	stopped
slow down	يبطئ	slowed down	slowed down
pass	يمر على	passed	passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
fall	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
put on	يرتدي / يضغط على	put on	put on
fly	يُطير	flew	flown
throw	يرمي / يقذف	threw	thrown

Important expressions and prepositions

It's great!	إنه شئ رائع!	I see.	فهمت.
Here I go!	ها أنا ذا!!	Be careful!	كن حريصا (حذرا)!
good at	جيد في	up and down	أعلى و أسفل
get in	يدخل / يركب سيارة	at 60 km/h	بسرعة ٦٠ كيلومتر في الساعة
go up	يصعد	get to	يصل إلى
go down	يهبط	get out	يخرج
I'm top of the class.	أنا الأول على الفصل.	Km/h = kilometer an hour	كيلومتر في الساعة

Listen and read.

Mazen : Nabil, have you seen my new bike? I got it last week from my grandparents.

مازن: نبيل، هل رأيت دراجتي الجديدة؟ حصلت عليها الأسبوع الماضي من أجدادي.

Nabil : It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

نبيل: انه لشيء رائع! هل أحضر دراجتي ونركب الدراجات معًا؟

Mazen : Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

مازن: حسنا، أنا لم أركب دراجة من قبل. لا أعرف كيف. والداي يريدانى أن أتعلم ركوبها.

Nabil : I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

نبيل: يمكنني أن أعلمك. الأمر سهل. الأمر كله يتعلق بالقوى التي تعلمنا عنها في درس العلوم أمس.

Mazen : What do you mean?

مازن: ماذا تقصد؟

Nabil : You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

نبيل: يمكنك استخدام القوة لتجعل الدراجة تتحرك عن طريق دفع البدالات. يمكنك أيضا استخدام القوة لوقف الدراجة ، وذلك باستخدام الفرامل. هذا يبطئ أو يوقف العجلات. إذا كنت تريد زيادة سرعتك ، اضغط على البدالات بسرعة أكبر.

Mazen : I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class in science! Here I go!

مازن: انا فهمت. يجب أن أكون جيدا في ركوب الدراجات إذا، لأنني في القمة في درس العلوم! ها أنا ذا!

Nabil : Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

نبيل: جيد. ستحتاج أن تقود الدراجة بقوة أكبر عندما تصعد هذا التل.

Mazen : Do you mean use more push force?

مازن: هل تقصد استخدام المزيد من قوة الدفع؟

Help your child read a dialog about how a bike moves.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حوارًا عن كيف تتحرك الدراجة.

Nabil : Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

نبيل: نعم، لكن تذكر، عندما تنزل التل، ستذهب الدراجة بشكل أسرع، لذلك ستحتاج إلى استخدام الفرامل.

Mazen : I did it! That was great!

مازن: لقد فعلتها! كان ذلك رائعا!

Nabil : Be careful! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go faster or the bike will fall over ... Oh, dear, are you OK?

نبيل: كن حذرا! أنت الآن تقود الدراجة ببطء شديد. كنت بحاجة للذهاب أسرع أو ستسقط الدراجة ... آه، يا عزيزي، هل انت بخير؟

Mazen : I fell, but I'm fine.

مازن: لقد سقطت، ولكن أنا بخير.

Nabil : I'll help you stand up.

نبيل: سأساعدك على الوقوف.

Mazen : Thanks! That's an example of a pull force, isn't it? I think I'm better at science than riding a bike!

مازن: شكراً! هذا مثال على قوة السحب، أليس كذلك؟ أعتقد أنني أفضل في العلوم من ركوب الدراجة!

Answer the following questions:

1. What do you use to get the bike to move?

....

2. What do you use to stop the bike?

....

3. What do you do when you want to increase your speed?

....

Did you know ?

The fastest roller coaster (قطار الملاهي) in the world is the Formula Rossa. It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride it in Abu Dhabi (مدينة أبو ظبي).

Help your child read a dialog about how a bike moves.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حوارًا عن كيف تتحرك الدراجة.

Read and learn.

- A push force makes the bike move.
- Brakes slow down or stop the wheels.
- To increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
- If you cycle too slowly, the bike will fall over.
- When a car goes too fast down a hill, you need to use the brakes.
- The car goes at 60 Km/h . This is the car's speed.

Look and learn.

Forces

pull



open a door



fly a kite



put on socks

push



kick a ball



close a laptop



throw a basketball

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually get the .... to school.
   a) bus b) car c) taxi d) train
2. .... took me to school today.
   a) Mom b) Dad c) Aunt d) Uncle
3. I .... my dad and closed the car door.
   a) invited b) helped c) thanked d) visited
4. I had some time to talk to my ....
   a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm good at riding a ....
   a) rocket b) ship c) bike d) plane
2. We can .... to school.
   a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike
3. We learned about forces in our .... lesson yesterday.
   a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music
4. The bike moves by pushing the ....
   a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels
5. If you want to stop the bike, use the ....
   a) seats b) wheels c) brakes d) pedals
6. If you want to increase the .... , push the pedals more quickly.
   a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed
7. Cycle harder when you go .... that hill.
   a) down b) up c) in d) out
8. When you go fast down a hill, you need to use the ....
   a) wheels b) pedals c) brakes d) seats
9. An example of a .... force is helping someone stand up.
   a) pull b) push c) relax d) sleep
10. I'm good at ....
    a) cycle b) cycles c) cycling d) cycled



Read the following text and answer the questions.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was traveling at 40 kilometers an hour. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, got out, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I usually get to school by ....
   a) car　b) train　c) bus　d) boat
2. The underlined words "get to" mean to .... at school.
   a) play　b) run　c) walk　d) arrive
3. I went to school with .... today.
   a) Mom　b) Dad　c) brother　d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What speed was the car traveling at?

....

5. What did you do when you get to school early?

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your new bike

Guiding words:

(birthday - my parents - learn how - pedals - brakes)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Listen and say.


tires
إطارات


spring
زنبرك


rope
حبل


hook
خطاف

Key vocabulary

friction	قوة الاحتكاك	tennis ball	كرة تنس
tension	قوة الشد (الضغط)	object	شيء
space	فراغ / مساحة / فضاء	path	طريق
air resistance	مقاومة الهواء	press	يضغط على
gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	spring force	قوة الزنبرك
scientist	عالم	normal size	حجم طبيعي
plane	طائرة	dictionary	قاموس
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	hang	يُعلق

Definitions

tension	It is a pull force.
gravity	a force that pulls objects toward the Earth
friction	rubbing of one surface against another
air resistance	works against an object as it moves through the air.
spring force	happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller. The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.

Question tag
السؤال المذيل

- It has two parts. يتكون من جزئين.

(1) a sentence , (2) question tag?

Usage

- We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

- The question tag is formed of: يتكون السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?
فعل مساعد / فعل ناقص + ضمير فاعل

Notes

1. positive sentence , negative tag? الجملة مثبتة ← السؤال منفي

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

2. negative sentence , positive tag? الجملة منفية ← السؤال مثبت

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

3. We use a comma before the question tag and a question mark after the question tag.

Lesson (2)

لاحظ الأفعال في حالتي الاثبات والنفي:

is / are / was / were ⟷ isn't / aren't / wasn't / weren't

have / has / had + P.P ⟷ haven't / hasn't / hadn't

will / would / can / could / must ⟷ won't / wouldn't / can't / couldn't / mustn't

e.g. This bird can fly, can't it?

e.g. He'll call you tomorrow, won't he?

عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد أو ناقص في الجملة:

مصدر الفعل → **don't**

v + s, es, ies → **doesn't**

التصريف الثاني للفعل → **didn't**

e.g. They like museums, don't they?

e.g. She makes tea, doesn't she?

e.g. He visited the zoo, didn't he?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, ... there?
   a) am b) is c) are d) have
2. She didn't tell me her name, ... she?
   a) did b) didn't c) wasn't d) weren't
3. You .... send Grandpa an email, won't you?
   a) can b) may c) will d) must
4. We can make dinner tonight, ... we?
   a) can't b) isn't c) mustn't d) aren't
5. It .... be hot tomorrow, will it?
   a) can't b) isn't c) won't d) aren't

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. Dad will help me with my homework, ... (can't) he?
2. You .... (lived) in Damietta, don't you?
3. They can speak English, ... (won't) they?
4. Hala .... (goes) to the sports center, didn't she?

Help your child understand question tag.

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم السؤال المذيل.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

didn't - gravity - What - scientist - cook

Anas : I went to the museum today.

Safia : Really! 1) .... was there?

Anas : There was a 2) .... talking to some children.

Safia : What did he talk about?

Anas : The importance of 3) ....

Safia : You understood it, 4) .... you?

Anas : Yes, I did.

2 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box:

slowly - space - friction - smaller - pull

1. You can fall on ice because there is less .... than on the path.
2. Tension is a .... force.
3. Air resistance makes an object move more ....
4. When you press on a spring, it gets ....
5. Gravity keeps people from flying up into ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... between the bike tires and the road stops you from falling.
   a) Friction b) Tension c) Gravity d) Force
2. When you hang a bag on a hook, the bag creates a pull force called ......
   a) push b) friction c) tension d) resistance
3. .... works against an object as it moves through the air.
   a) Tension b) Gravity c) Air resistance d) Pull

...such questions.

4. .... happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller. The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.
   a) Tension b) Friction c) Gravity d) Spring force
5. .... is a force that pulls objects toward the Earth.
   a) Air resistance b) Gravity c) Spring force d) Tension
6. The children visited the science museum today, ... ?
   a) didn't they b) did they c) were they d) had they
7. People can see some interesting things there, ... ?
   a) can they b) can't they c) will they d) won't they
8. Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, ... ?
   a) will he b) won't they c) can he d) can't he
9. The science museum isn't far from the city center, ... ?
   a) isn't it b) is it c) does it d) doesn't it
10. Hamdi and his family traveled by boat, didn't ....
   a) he b) him c) they d) them

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. won't - tomorrow - It - rain - it - , will - ?

....

2. does - doesn't - Your - French, - mom - speak - she - ?

....

3. didn't - chicken, - She - have - she - did - ?

....

5 Complete the question tags.

1. Mr Hassan doesn't drive cars, ... he?
2. I'll be in your class next year, ... I?
3. Rania can play the guitar, ... she?
4. Eman didn't go to the park, ... she?
5. I like English, ... I?

Lesson (3) PAPER AIRPLANES

Key vocabulary

paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	triangle	مثلث
dart	سهم (طائرة ورقية)	top	العليا / علوى
glider	طائرة شراعية	tip	طرف
instructions	تعليمات	vertically	عموديًا
corner	زاوية - ركن	flat	مسطح / مستوٍ
faster	أسرع	farther	أبعد
longer	أطول	wing	جناح

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
take	يأخذ	took	taken
fold	يطوي	folded	folded
crease	يجعّد / يضغط لعمل ثنْيه / يثني	creased	creased
repeat	يكرر	repeated	repeated

Important expressions and prepositions

a piece of	قطعة من	turn over	ينقلب
in half	في المنتصف	from point to point	من نقطة إلى نقطة
fold down	يطوي لأسفل	make sure	يتأكد
fold over	يطوي لأعلى	How far ......?	كم المسافة ....؟

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

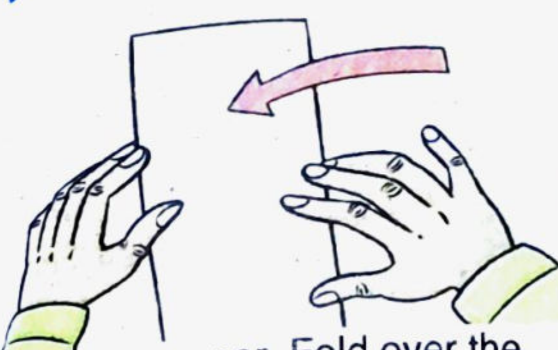
Lesson (3)

4 Read the instructions. Make a dart paper airplane.

The Dart

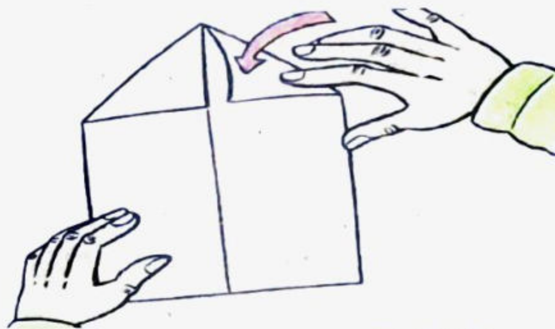
1 Take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it.

خذ قطعة من الورق وأطوها نصفين رأسيًا واضغط على الثنيه.



2 Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners.

افتح الورقة. اطوِ أعلى طرفيها.



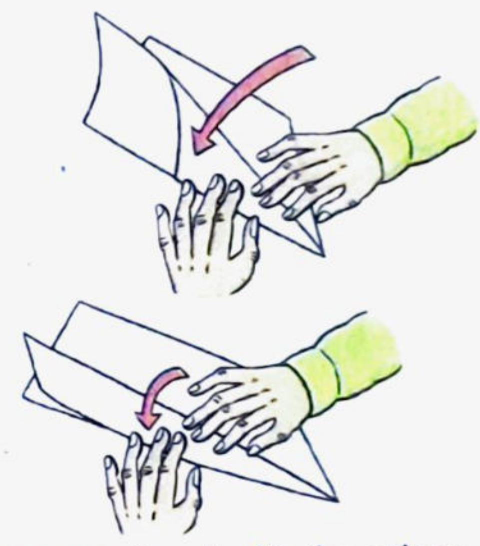
3 Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.

اقلب الورقة. أطوها لنصفين واضغط على الثنيه.



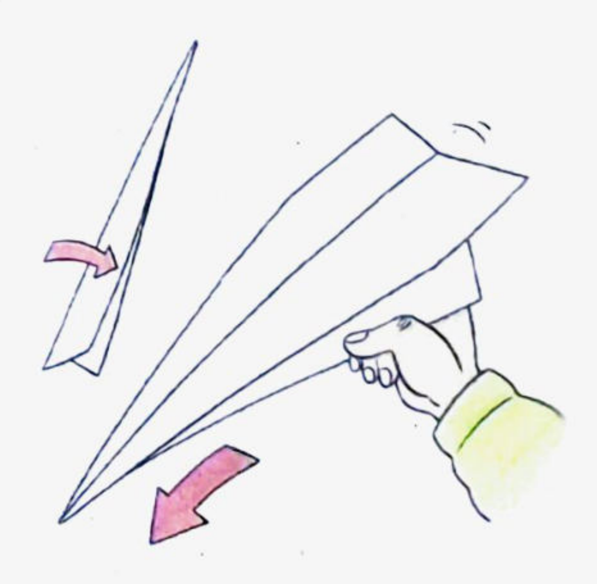
4 Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again.

اطوِ أحد اجنحتها واضغط الثنيه العليا ثم أطوها لأسفل واضغط على الثنيه مرة أخرى.



5 Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly.

كرر الخطوة الرابعة مع الجناح الآخر. طائرتك الورقية جاهزة للطيران.



Help your child make a Dart paper airplane.

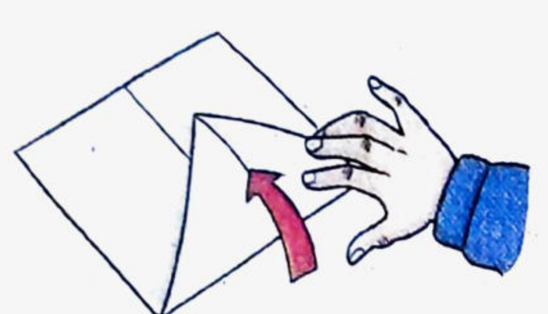
ساعد طفلك أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقية.

F Read the instructions. Make a Glider paper airplane

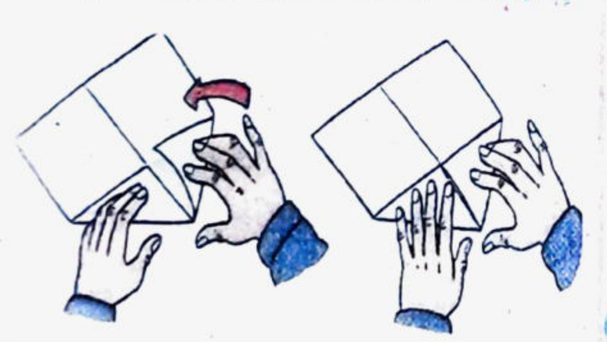
The Glider

1. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Dart.
كرر الخطوتين ١ و ٢ من صناعة الطائرة الورقية.

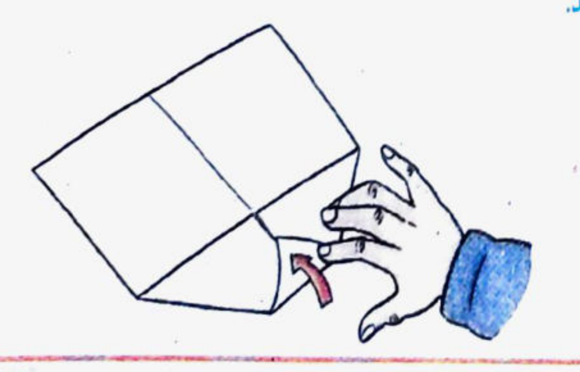
2. Fold over the top triangle. Crease it.
اطو المثلث أعلى الورقة ثم اضغط على الثنيه.



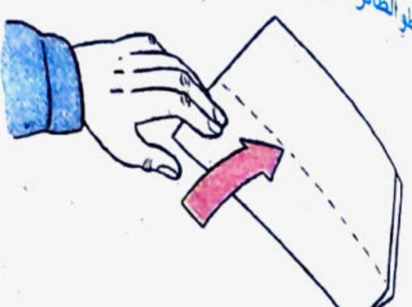
3. Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.
اطوِ أعلى الجانبين مرة ثانية. تأكد من أن كل الورق مسطح.



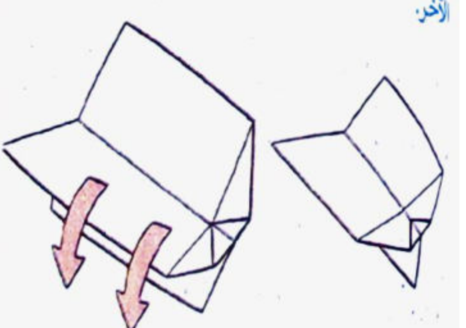
4. Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.
اطو الطّرف الأعلى من نقطة إلى أخرى. واضغط على كل ثنيه بشكل جيد.



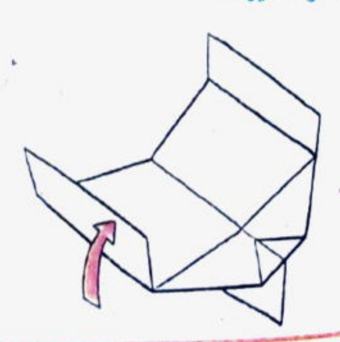
5. Fold the plane in half.
اطوِ الطائرة من المنتصف.



6. Fold down the wings. Fold from one corner to the other corner.
اطوِ الأجنحة لأسفل. اطوِ من جانب إلى الجانب الآخر.



7. Now fold up a small (about 1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!
والآن اطوِ أعلى الجناح قطعة تبلغ ١ سم. طائرتك الشراعية جاهزة للطيران.



Help your child make a Dart paper airplane.
ساعد طفلك أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقية.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

wood - Dart - over - paper - vertically

Seif : What are you doing, Anas?

Anas : I'm making a 1) .... airplane.

Seif : How do you make it?

Anas : Fold a piece of paper in half 2) ....

Seif : What do you do after that?

Anas : Fold 3) .... the top two corners. Fold down the two wings.

Your 4) .... is ready to fly.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

tip - top - down - piece - peace

To make a Glider paper airplane, you need to take a 1) .... of paper and fold it in half vertically. Fold over the 2) .... two corners. Fold over the 3) .... from point to point and crease everything well. Fold 4) .... the wings. Fold up a small piece of the wing. It's ready now.

3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A Dart paper airplane

Guiding words:

(paper - vertically - crease - open - Fold - Turn)

....

....

....

Lesson (4) GRANDPA'S SPECIAL SHOES



Key vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	a trampoline	ترامبولين (جهاز للقفز)	gravity	جاذبية
special	خاص / مميز	a parachute	باراشوت	normal	طبيعي



Extra vocabulary

usual	معتاد	leaves	أوراق شجر	stadium	استاد
different	مختلف	fall	فصل الخريف	amazing	مذهل
ground	أرض	planets	كواكب	pilot	طيار
journey	رحلة	space rocket	صاروخ فضاء	desert	صحراء



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
look like	يشبه looked like	looked like
reply	يرد / يجيب replied	replied
follow	يتبع followed	followed
jump	يقفز jumped	jumped
float	يطفو floated	floated
pour	يصب poured	poured

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي wore	worn
bring	يحضر brought	brought
show	يبين / يعرض showed	shown
sit down	يجلس sat down	sat down
hit	يضرب hit	hit
fall	يقع fell	fallen

Lesson (4)

Important expressions and prepositions

better than usual	أفضل من المعتاد	fly up	يحلق عاليا
by their sides	بجانبهم	fly over	يحلق فوق
a pair of	زوج من	float up into the air	يسبح في الهواء

Definitions

normal	usual, not different	طبيعي
gravity	a force that pulls things to the ground	الجاذبية
astronaut	somebody who travels into space for a job	رائد فضاء
tour	a journey when you visit many different places	جولة / رحلة
special	different from others and better than usual	خاص / مميز

Listen and read.

Flying signs

❶ She has moved her arm to the right, so she will fly to the right.

حركت ذراعها لليمين، لذلك ستطير إلى اليمين.





❷ She has both arms above her head, so she will fly higher.

رفعت ذراعيها فوق رأسها ، لذلك سوف تطير لأعلى.



❸ She has put her arms down by her sides, so she will fly down again.

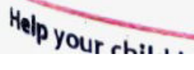
وضعت ذراعيها إلى أسفل على جانبيها، لذلك ستهبط مرة أخرى.



❹ She has moved her arm to the left, so she will fly to the left.

حركت ذراعها لليسار، لذلك ستطير إلى اليسار.





Listen and read.

Special shoes



It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.

كان ذلك عام ٢١٢٢، كان الجدُّ يزور هادى وهدى. كان الجد رائد فضاء عندما كان أصغر سنا. وعندما كان يزورهم كان يجلب دائمًا شيئًا مثيرًا.

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady."Do you have something to show us?" asked Hoda. "I always bring you something, don't I? Look at these," "They don't look like normal shoes,"said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied."Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoe can do." he said. He showed the children a pair of shoes. Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

قال هادى "مرحبا أيها الجد!". سألت هدى "هل لديك شيء لترينا؟". قال الجد "أنا دائما أجلب لك شيئا، أليس كذلك؟ انظرا إلى هذه" وأظهر للأطفال زوجا من الأحذية. قال هادي:"لا يبدو مثل الأحذية العادية". أجاب الجد:" أنت على حق"."دعنا نذهب للخارج. سأريك ما يمكن أن تفعله الأحذية." اتبع هادى وهدى الجد إلى خارج المنزل ثم إلى تل. كانوا متحمسين جدا. جلسوا وأخذ الجد ثلاثة أزواج من الأحذية من الحقيبة.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

قال الجد:" عادة ما تسحب الجاذبية الأشياء إلى الأرض". "لكن هذه أحذية خاصة. عندما ترتديها، فإن الجاذبية لا تسحبك إلى أسفل. إذا يا أطفال، إذا كنتم تستطيعون الطيران، فماذا يمكنكم أن تفعلوا؟"

Lesson (4)

"I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team," Hady said. "I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said. "Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One, two, three... Good. Look! You can fly!"

قال هادي "كنت سأطير فوق الملعب لمشاهدة فريق كرة القدم المفضل لدي". قالت هدى:" كنت سأطير فوق البحر". "لنبدأ بجولة في مدينتنا،" قال الجد."ارتديا هذه الأحذية. الآن ، اضرب قدمك اليسرى بقدمك اليمنى ثلاث مرات. واحد ، اثنان ، ثلاثة... جيد. انظرا يمكنك الطيران!"

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.

طار الأطفال في الهواء. يمكنهم التحرك يمينا أو يسارا عن طريق تحريك ذراع إلى هذا الجانب. إذا وضعوا أذرعهم فوق رؤوسهم ، طاروا لأعلى. إذا وضعوا أذرعهم على جانبهم ، طاروا لأسفل مرة ثانية. أحب هادى وهدى الطيران. لقد كان شعورا رائعا. يمكنهم رؤية كل المدينة من الأعلى هناك.

After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down to the ground again." When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why doesn't everybody have shoes like these?" "Because they are only for astronauts!" said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite grandchildren!"

بعد عشر دقائق ، قال الجد ، " حسنا يا أطفال. الآن نحن بحاجة إلى النزول إلى الأرض مرة أخرى." عندما كانوا على الأرض، سألت هدى، " لماذا لا يرتدي الجميع أحذية مثل هذه؟" قال الجد "لأنهم فقط لرواد الفضاء!". "والأشخاص المميزون أيضا، مثل أحفادي المفضلين!"

Listen and read.



Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

أن الجاذبية هى التي تجعل الأشياء تسقط على الأرض. وهى القوة التي تجعل أوراق الشجر تسقط في الخريف على الأرض ولا تطير أعلى الشجر. وعندما يقفز هذا الولد على السرير تسحبه الجاذبية لأسفل وتمنعه من الطفو في الهواء. وهى أيضا القوة التي تجعل الكواكب تدور حول الشمس.

Read and think.

What would happen if there was no gravity?

Everything would float up into the air.



What makes the parachute go down to the ground?

It's gravity.





Help your child read about gravity.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الجاذبية

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa showed the children a pair of ....
   a) shoes b) socks c) boots d) gloves
2. They don't look like .... shoes.
   a) usual b) normal c) local d) unusual
3. They followed grandpa out of the house to a ....
   a) hall b) hill c) club d) room
4. They were very ....
   a) sad b) ugly c) kind d) excited

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

feeling - sides - higher - up - down

The children flew 1) .... into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew 2) .... up. If they put their arms down by their 3) ...., they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing 4) .... They could see all the city from up there.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. showed - a pair of - Grandpa - children - shoes - the - .
   ....
2. you - Do - something - to show - have - us - ?
   ....
3. above - The children - village - flying - the - enjoyed - .
   ....
4. fall - to - the ground - Leaves - in fall - .
   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?" "I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team,"Hady said. "I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said. Put these shoes on. Now,hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One, two,three...Good. Look! You can fly!".

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Gravity usually .... things to the ground
   a) pushes b) sells c) pulls d) buys
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) things b) shoes c) children d) cities
3. Grandpa's shoes are ....
   a) special b) ordinary c) normal d) common

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why would Hady fly over the stadium?

....

5. What's the main idea of the text?

....

Jobs

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
astronaut	رائد فضاء	web designer	مصمم شبكات
engineer	مهندس	pilot	طيار
architect	مهندس معماري	doctor	طبيب

School Subjects

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
physics	فيزياء	science	مادة العلوم
chemistry	كيمياء	math	مادة الرياضيات
architecture	هندسة معمارية	English	اللغة الانجليزية

Extra vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
Mars	كوكب المريخ	health	صحة
acceleration	سرعة	office	مكتب
skills	مهارات	medicine	طب
robot	إنسان آلي	skateboard	لوح تزلج

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
solve	يحل	solved	solved
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
end	ينهي	ended	ended
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
design	يصمم	designed	designed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past		P.P
grow up	grew up	يكبر	grown up
leave	left	يغادر	left
give	gave	يعطي	given
speak	spoke	يتحدث	spoken
meet	met	يقابل	met

Important expressions and prepositions

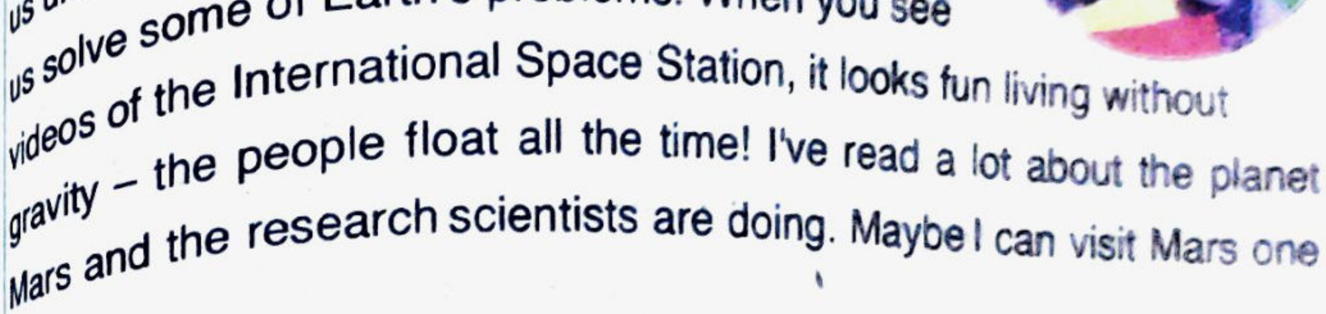
Expression	Meaning
do research	يجرى بحثًا
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء
work hard	يعمل بجد
in the day	في النهار
across the world	حول العالم
close to	قريب من
get help from	يحصل على مساعدة من
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
work for	يعمل لدى
get sick	يمرض
work on a project	يعمل في مشروع
interested in + (noun / v + ing)	مهتم بـ
our own planet	كوكبنا
International Space Station	محطة الفضاء الدولية

Definitions

Word	Definition
pilot	a person who flies airplanes
astronaut	a person who works in space
engineer	a person who builds roads and bridges
aircraft = airplane	people can travel through the air on it
architect	a person who designs buildings and roads

Lesson (5)

Look and read.



❶ I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity – the people float all the time! I've read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!

أنا أمل. أريد أن أكون رائدة فضاء لأنني مهتمة بالنجوم والكواكب. من المهم دراسة الكواكب الأخرى لأنها تساعدنا في فهم كوكبنا، وهذا قد يساعدنا في حل بعض مشاكل الأرض. عندما تشاهد فيديوهات عن محطة الفضاء الدولية، يبدو مضحكًا العيش هناك بدون الجاذبية - الناس تطفو طوال الوقت! لقد قرأت الكثير عن كوكب المريخ والأبحاث التي يقوم بها العلماء. ربما يمكنني زيارة المريخ يوما ما!

❷ My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges? They also help make things such as skateboards! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.

اسمي جنى. عندما أكبر، أود أن أكون مهندسة مثل عمي وائل. وظيفته تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام حقا. هل تعلم أن الأشخاص الذين يقومون بهذه المهمة لا يساعدون فقط في بناء الطرق والجسور؟ إنهم يساعدون أيضًا في صنع أشياء مثل ألواح التزلج! يقول العم وائل أنك بحاجة إلى فهم العلوم للقيام بهذه المهمة. على سبيل المثال، تحتاج إلى معرفة كيف يؤثر الاحتكاك والقوى المختلفة على كيفية تحرك ألواح التزلج.



❸ I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle. The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together. It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!

أنا كريم. قررت أنني أريد أن أصبح طيارا عندما ذهبت إلى مهرجان للطائرات مع أمي وأبي. رأينا الكثير من الطائرات المختلفة تحلق في السماء ، وبعضها قام بحركات مذهلة ، وحلقت بالقرب من الأرض ، ثم حلقت في دائرة. حلقت الطائرات في مجموعات ، وأحيانا تكون أجنحتها قريبة جدا من بعضها البعض. بدا الأمر مذهلا. كان هناك أيضا متحف صغير ، وتعلمت كيف تساعد مقاومة الهواء الطائرات على البقاء في الهواء!

Read the article about Sherif.



Meet Sherif, 24, from Cairo. He's an engineer who has started his own company.

تعرف على شريف، ٢٤ عاماء من القاهرة. إنه مهندس والذى بدأ شركته الخاصة.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things.

د شريف أن يكون مهندسا عندما كان عمره عشر سنوات. كان دائما يشاهد البرامج التلفزيونية عن وبوتات ، وكان يحب صنع الأشياء.

When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company.

ما كان عمره ثلاثة عشر عامًا ، بدأ في مساعدة شركة تصميم روبوت عبر الإنترنت. قام بعمله المدرسي في ار وفي المساء كان يعمل في مشاريـع الروبوت الخاصة به. ساعدته هذه التجربة على بدء شركته الخاصة.

Help your child read about jobs in science.

طفلك أن يقرأ عن وظائف متعلقة بالعلوم.

Lesson (5)

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

قال إن دروس العلوم والرياضيات في المدرسة ساعدته على تعلم كيفية حل المشكلات. كما وجد أن اللغة الإنجليزية مفيدة للغاية لأنها تساعده على العمل مع الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم. وهو الآن يتعلم اللغة اليابانية حتى يتمكن من التحدث إلى الناس في اليابان.

"For me, a job is about doing things which help other people around the world," he says.

يقول: "بالنسبة لي ، الوظيفة هي ما يتعلق بفعل الأشياء التي تساعد الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم".

Ask and answer.

What job do you want to do when you are older? Why?





I want to be a doctor because I want to help people who are sick.



I want to be an architect because I want to design new buildings.

Did you know ?

On Earth, gravity pushes our bones together.
There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart.
So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller!
(They return to their usual size back on Earth.)



Help your child read about jobs in science.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وظائف متعلقة بالعلوم.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sherif wanted to be a/an ....
   a) doctor b) engineer c) teacher d) vet
2. He always watched TV programs about ....
   a) animals b) sports c) robots d) birds
3. He loved .... things.
   a) buying b) selling c) making d) playing
4. When he was .... , he started helping a robot design company online.
   a) ten b) eleven c) twelve d) thirteen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I want to be a/an .... because I'm interested in the stars and the planets.
   a) pilot b) doctor c) engineer d) astronaut
2. When there's no gravity, people .... all the time.
   a) float b) caught c) bought d) boat
3. .... help make things such as skateboards.
   a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Pilots d) Astronauts
4. To be a good engineer, you need to learn .... and math.
   a) Arabic b) music c) science d) Japanese
5. I decided to be a/an .... when I went to an airplane festival.
   a) astronaut b) engineer c) pilot d) architect
6. .... helps the planes to stay in the air.
   a) Gravity b) Friction c) Air resistance d) Floating

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. skills - She - computer - good - has - .

   ....

2. new - buildings - An architect - designs - .

   ....

3. can - We - on - travel - an aircraft - .

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sara wants to be a pilot. She wants an exciting job. She enjoys traveling and she likes visiting new places. She would like to work as part of a team. Her friend Dalia wants to be a doctor. She's interested in people's health and why people get sick. She likes working with people and she thinks she'd like to work in medicine.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara wants to be a/an ....
   a) doctor b) engineer c) pilot d) astronaut
2. Dalia is interested in people's ....
   a) money b) stories c) health d) education
3. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ....
   a) Sara b) Mona c) Dalia d) Noha

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Sara enjoy doing?

....

5. Who does Dalia like working with?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your future job

Guiding words:

(science - engineer - buildings - bridges - skateboards)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (6)

WRITING AN EMAIL

How to write an email

كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا



Remember, when you write an email to a friend, you can use informal language. You can write how you would speak to them, and start and end in a friendly way. For example:

- Start the email with Hi! or Hello! and How are you?
- Say what you want to do and why.
- Use sequencing words: First, then, and finally to order the information.
- Write two or three paragraphs.
- End with Bye for now! or See you soon!

Read the email.

From : Maged
To : Asser
Subject : A job in the future

Hi Asser,

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.

I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science.

مرحبا آسر،

هل تستمتع بعطلة نهاية الأسبوع عند أجدادك؟ لقد سألتني عن الوظيفة التي أريد القيام بها في المستقبل وقررت الآن. أريد أن أكون عالما وأدرس الفضاء. أنا مهتم حقا بالفضاء وأريد أن أفهمه بشكل أفضل. لا يزال هناك الكثير الذي لا نعرفه. تحدثت إلى والديّ حول ما يجب أن أفعله. هذا ما قالوه: أولا، أنا بحاجة إلى القيام بعمل جيد في المدرسة، وخاصة في مجال العلوم.

Help your child learn how to write an email.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كتابة البريد الإلكتروني.

Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

بعد ذلك ، أحتاج إلى الذهاب إلى الجامعة ودراسة مواد مثل الكيمياء والرياضيات والفيزياء. هل تعرف ما هي الفيزياء؟ الأمر كله يتعلق بالطاقة والفضاء والوقت ، لذا فهو مفيد إذا كنت ترغب في دراسة النجوم والكواكب.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Bye for now!

Maged

أخيرا ، أحتاج إلى العثور على وظيفة في مكان يدرس فيه الناس الفضاء ، مثل الجامعة. ثم يمكنني العمل على المشاريع والتعلم من علماء آخرين. ما رأيك؟ هل تعرف الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها في المستقبل؟

وداعا الآن!

ماجد

Answer the following questions.

1. Does Maged want to go into space in the future?

....

2. What will he do when he leaves school?

....

3. What is the most important school subject for him?

....

General Activities

1 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

to your friend Omar telling him about your future job.

Guiding words:

doctor - biology - science - hospital - sick

From : ....

To : ....

Subject: ....

....

....

2 Complete the email with words from the box.

Bye for now - Finally - First - Hello - How are you - Then

From : **Reem**

To : **Sherifa**

Subject: **Future Job**

.... Sherifa,

1) .... ? Are you having fun on vacation?

2) ....

I'm thinking about the future and I've decided what I want to do. I want to be an architect and design buildings. I'm really interested in designing buildings with renewable resources. I think we need to design better buildings in the future.

I talked to my teachers about what I need to do.

3) ...., I need to work hard at school, especially in subjects like math, physics, art, and design. 4) ...., I need to go to university and study architecture. At university, I'll learn how to design lots of different buildings.

5) ...., I need to find a job as an architect. I want to work with people who design apartments to live in. I'm not interested in designing big hotels or offices. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

....!

6) ....

Reem

Help your child learn how to write an email.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كتابة البريد الإلكتروني.

Lesson (7)

Look and say.

wings اجنحة

feathers ريش

land يهبط

Extra vocabulary

ground	ارض	tower	برج	frightened	خائف
(be) called	يُسَمى / يُدَّعى	builder	عامل بناء	nervous	متوتر
famous	مشهور	inventor	مخترع	patient	صبور
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	water clock	ساعة مائية	surprised	مندهش
fields	حقول	confused	مرتبك / مشوش	worried	قلق

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
land	يهبط	landed	landed	invent	يخترع	invented	invented
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed	include	يتضمن	included	included
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed	hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Important expressions and prepositions

walk through	يمشي عبر	made of	مصنوع من
find out	يكتشف	run back down	يجري عائدًا لأسفل

Definitions

feathers	soft things that cover a bird	ريش
land	move down until something is on the ground	يهبط
invent	make or design something for the first time	يخترع
builder	a person who builds houses, schools, etc.	عامل بناء
inventor	a person who makes or designs new things	مخترع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and Read.

Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

بلغ علي عشر سنوات من العمر وعاش في القرن التاسع. كان يعمل في مزرعة والده. كل يوم في ذلك الصيف ، يرى رجلا يمشي عبر الحقول باتجاه برج. كان الرجل كبيرا في السن لكنه بدا قويا. في أحد الأيام ، قرر التحدث إلى الرجل.

"Excuse me, where are you going?" Ali asked.

"I'm working at the old tower." the man answered.

"Are you a builder?" Ali asked.

سأله علي "عفوا، إلى أين أنت ذاهب؟". أجاب الرجل "أنا أعمل في البرج القديم". سأله علي "هل أنت عامل بناء؟".

The man laughed."No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!"

ضحك الرجل وقال."لا ، أنا مخترع. أنا عمري 65 عامًا لكنني لا أريد التوقف عن العمل. هناك دائما أشياء جديدة لاكتشافها!"

"What are you working on now?" asked Ali.

"I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird." the man said, and walked away.

The next day, Ali decided to follow. He was carrying something.

"What are you carrying?" asked Ali.

سأله علي "ما الذي تعمل عليه الآن؟". قال الرجل "أحاول معرفة كيفية الطيران مثل الطيور." ، ومشى بعيدا.

في اليوم التالي ، قرر علي أن يتبعه وكان يحمل شيئا. سأله علي "ماذا تحمل؟".

"These are my wings. They are made of wood and feathers." he said.

"Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali.

" Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said.

قال الرجل "هذان هما جناحي، وهما مصنوعان من الخشب والريش." سأله علي. "هل ستستخدمها للطيران؟". قال الرجل "حسنا، لماذا لا تأتي معي؟ ثم سنعرف، أليس كذلك؟".

Help your child read a story about the first man to fly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة عن أول رجل يطير.

Lesson (7)

They walked to the tower and climbed to the top. Ali watched as the man put on his wings. "OK, here I go!" said the man, and he jumped from the tower! Ali was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He did not see him land.

ساروا إلى البرج وصعدوا إلى الأعلى. شاهد علي الرجل وهو يرتدي جناحيه. قال الرجل "حسنا، ها أنا ذا!"، وقفز من البرج! اندهش علي لأن الرجل طار ببطء على الأرض! لم يره وهو يهبط.

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting in the ground. He looked unhappy.

"Are you ok?" said Ali.

"No! That hurt!" he said.

"But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

ركض علي إلى أسفل البرج وسرعان ما وجد الرجل. كان جالسا على الأرض. بدا غير سعيد. " سأله علي "هل أنت بخير؟" قال الرجل. "لا! هذا مؤلم!" قال علي "لكنك طرت! رأيتك!".

"I flew but I did not land correctly," said the man. "I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

أنا طرت لكني لم أهبط بشكل صحيح. أريد أن أدرس الطيور بشكل أفضل لمعرفة كيف يهبطون بدون ايذاء أنفسهم".

Ali later found out that the man called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks.

اكتشف علي لاحقا أن الرجل يدعى عباس بن فرناس. لقد كان شخصا مهما والذي اخترع أشياء كثيرة، بما في ذلك الساعات المائية.

But Ali did not know that in the future. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

لكن علي لم يرد أن يعرف مدى ذلك في المستقبل. أصبح عباس بن فرناس مشهورا جدا لأنه ربما كان أول شخص يطير على الإطلاق باستخدام الأجنحة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali is .... years old.
   a) 8 b) 9 c) 10 d) 11
2. Ali lives in the 9th ....
   a) decade b) century c) month d) year
3. The wings were made of .... and feathers.
   a) wood b) glass c) plastic d) iron
4. Abbas Ibn Firnas was the .... man to fly.
   a) third b) second c) fourth d) first

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We got a/an .... to build our house.
   a) doctor b) builder c) pilot d) engineer
2. Abbas Ibn Firnas .... many useful inventions.
   a) invented b) wrote c) read d) spoke
3. To .... means to move down until something is on the ground.
   a) hand b) land c) band d) run
4. Birds have .... all over their bodies.
   a) feathers b) meat c) skin d) bones
5. A/An .... is a person who makes or designs new things.
   a) inventor b) artist c) doctor d) pilot

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. was - Abbas - inventor - Firnas - an - Ibn - .

....

2. used - wings - He - two - fly - to - birds - like - .

....

3. water - He - clocks - invented - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. He was very old but he worked hard. He didn't want to stop working because of his age. He was the first person ever to fly using wings. So he became very famous.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Clocks tell us the ....
   a) time b) place c) weather d) action
2. Ibn Firnas became famous because he was the first man to ....
   a) read b) write c) draw d) fly
3. The underlined word "old" here is the opposite of ....
   a) big b) small c) young d) new

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was Abbas Ibn Firnas?

....

5. Did he stop working when he became old?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Abbas Ibn Firnas

Guiding words:

(inventor - 9th century - fly - feathers - famous)

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

My new bike

Last week my grandpa bought me a new bike. It was a present for my birthday. It has two wheels, pedals and brakes. To make it move, I have to push the pedals. It moves with push force. When I want to slow it down or stop it, I use the brakes. To move it faster, I push the pedals quickly. I like riding my new bike very much.

A dart paper airplane

To make a dart paper airplane, take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it. Then open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. After that, turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again. Finally your dart is ready to fly!

From : Safia
To : Anas
Subject : A famous person

Hi Anas,
How are you? I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about a famous person I read about. His name is Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an inventor. He invented many things like the water clocks. He was the first man to fly. He used wings made of wood and feathers.
Bye for now!
Safia

From : Seif
To : Amira
Subject : My future job

Hi Amira,
How are you? I want to tell you about the job I'd like to do in the future. I want to be an astronaut. I like reading about stars and planets very much. I like watching the stars. In space there's no gravity. I'll float in space. What about you?
See you soon.
Seif

Review on Unit (4)

Forces

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
bike	دراجة	friction	احتكاك
brake	فرامل	gravity	الجاذبية (الأرضية)
wheel	عجلة	hook	خطاف
speed	سرعة	spring	زنبرك
push force	قوة الدفع	rope	حبل
pull force	قوة السحب	tire / tyre	إطار (العجلة)

School Subjects

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
physics	فيزياء	science	مادة العلوم
chemistry	كيمياء	math	مادة الرياضيات
architecture	هندسة معمارية	English	اللغة الأنجليزية

Jobs

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
astronaut	رائد فضاء	web designer	مصمم شبكات
engineer	مهندس	pilot	طيار
architect	مهندس معماري	doctor	طبيب
builder	عامل بناء		

Paper airplane

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
Dart	سهم	crease	يجعّد / يضغط على الثنيه
Glider	طائرة شراعية	vertically	رأسيًا
tip	طرف	wing	جناح

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Question tag
السؤال المذيل

- It has two parts. يتكون من جزئين.

(1) a sentence , (2) question tag?

Usage

- We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

- The question tag is formed of: يتكون السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?
فعل مساعد / فعل ناقص / ضمير فاعل

Notes

1. positive sentence , negative tag?

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

2. negative sentence , positive tag?

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

3. We use a comma before the question tag.

e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

[illegible] ……………… دراجة ………………
[illegible] ……………… دوسة / بدال ………………

Lesson (2)

[illegible] ……………… إطارات ………………
حلاق ……………… حبل ………………

Lesson (3)

طرف ……………… طائرة ورقية ………………
عموديا ……………… سهم (طائرة ورقية) ………………
مسطح / مستو ……………… طائرة شراعية ………………
أسرع ……………… تعليمات ………………
أطول ……………… زاوية ………………
أبعد ……………… مثلث ………………
جناح ……………… العليا / علوى ………………

Lesson (4)

باراشوت ……………… رائد فضاء ………………
جاذبية ……………… خاص / مميز ………………
طبيعي ……………… ترامبولين (جهاز للقفز) ………………

Lesson (5)

مصمم شبكات ……………… رائد فضاء ………………
طيار ……………… فيزياء ………………
كيمياء ……………… هندسة معمارية ………………

Lesson (7)

مخترع ……………… أجنحة ………………
ساعة مائية ……………… ريش ………………
مرتبك / مشوش ……………… يهبط ………………
خائف ……………… قرن (١٠٠ سنة) ………………
متوتر ……………… حقول ………………
[illegible] ……………… [illegible] ………………
مندهش ……………… عامل بناء ………………

Activities On Unit (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually get the .... to school.
   a) train b) metro c) bus d) car
2. I opened the car .... and got in.
   a) window b) door c) balcony d) tire
3. The car was traveling at 40 kilometers a/an ....
   a) second b) minute c) hour d) week
4. I like it when .... takes me to school.
   a) Dad b) Mom c) Uncle d) Aunt

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

own - making - programs - company - doctor

Shaimaa wanted to be an engineer when she was 7 years old. She watched TV 1)...................................... about robots, and she loved 2)...................... things. When she was 11, she started helping a robot design 3)...................................... online. Shaimaa is 24. She has started her 4).. company.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor. A long time ago, he invented many things, including water clocks. He also made some wings from wood and feathers. He then jumped from a tower and flew to the ground, but he didn't land well. Today, he is very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

Activities On Unit (4)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an ....

a) pilot   b) astronaut   c) inventor   d) engineer

2. He invented water ....

a) books   b) clocks   c) locks   d) socks

3. He made some wings from .... and feathers.

a) wool   b) stone   c) sand   d) wood

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did he jump from?

....

5. Why is he famous today?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The crocodile is a dangerous animal. [ ]
2. Gazelles can climb steep mountains. [ ]
3. Jubari looked for Donga. [ ]
4. The beach was too sandy. [ ]

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari lived in Wadi ....

2. There were .... trees in the desert.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There is less friction when you walk on a carpet than on ice, ... there?
   a) is b) isn't c) has d) hasn't
2. You live in Tharwat Street, ... you?
   a) do b) are c) don't d) aren't
3. My sister will be 10 years old next month, ... she?
   a) can b) will c) won't d) doesn't
4. Your mom .... make lovely cakes, can't she?
   a) can b) may c) will d) must
5. I have never been to France, ... I?
   a) have b) haven't c) do d) don't
6. Ali .... go home, did he?
   a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) isn't

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use - You - force - jump - a push - to - .
   ....
2. speed - over - Without - fall - will - bike - the - you - .
   ....
3. interested - planets - I - am - stars - in - and - .
   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Gravity

Guiding words:

(pull - ground - down - float)

....

....

....

....

Activities (1) On Review (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. An oasis is a place in the .... which has lots of natural resources.
   a) park b) desert c) zoo d) bank
2. People have lived in these oases for .... of years.
   a) millions b) hundreds c) thousands d) tens
3. .... is very important to grow crops.
   a) Industry b) Agriculture c) Sport d) Mining
4. People can grow lots of different fruits and ....
   a) vegetables b) cotton c) rice d) wheat

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

job - engineer - factory - luck - doctor

Mona : What would you like to do in the future?
Soha : I'd like to be an 1) ....
Mona : Why do you like this 2) .... ?
Soha : It's fantastic and I like maths.
Mona : Where will you work?
Soha : In a 3) ....
Mona : I wish you good 4) ....
Soha : Thanks a lot.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas invented many things. One of his inventions was a form of water clock called Al-Maqata. When **he** lived in the ninth **century**, there were no watches or phones! People looked at the sun, moon, and stars to tell the time, but this didn't work inside buildings or on cloudy days. So, Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a different kind of clock. It didn't use the sun, moon, or stars - it used another natural resource - water!

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a clock that used ....

   a) milk b) water c) tea d) honey

2. In the .... century, there were no watches or phones.

   a) 18th b) 17th c) 9th d) 20th

3. The word **century** means one .... years.

   a) decade b) hundred c) thousand d) million

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

....

5. What was the name of the water clock?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wadi El Gemal was a perfect place for gazelles. ( )
2. The crocodile was dangerous. ( )
3. Jubari found wadi of the gazelles. ( )
4. Jubari wasn't brave. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari to .... if he met a dangerous animal.
2. The .... offered Jubari some seagrass

Review (2)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If he .... money, he'll buy a new bike.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
2. She is very happy, ... she?
   a) is b) was c) has d) isn't
3. If we .... to an oasis, we would see plants and trees.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
4. They like museums, ... they?
   a) do b) don't c) doesn't d) are
5. She said she .... like pizza.
   a) isn't b) didn't c) won't d) hasn't
6. Fares said he usually .... to the sports center.
   a) goes b) will go c) is going d) went

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. pedals - Without - will - the - fall - bike - over - using - you - the - .

   ....
2. a rough - has - A glass - texture - window - .

   ....
3. as - used - They - honey - a medicine - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A job you'd like to do

Guiding words:

(grow up - would - architect - houses - buildings)

....

....

....

....

Activities (2) On Review (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... was another very important metal.
   a) Copper b) Gold c) Silver d) Iron
2. It was easy to .... copper.
   a) break b) bend c) heat d) boil
3. People used it to make ....
   a) spoons b) bowls c) tools d) forks
4. We can see a lot of these objects in .... museums.
   a) Spanish b) English c) French d) Egyptian

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fertile - Egypt - Agriculture - crops - metal.

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? 1).................................... was a very important part of the economy of ancient 2).................................... . The Nile flooded every year and made the soil 3).................................... . Farmers grew lots of different 4).................................... , such as cotton and rice.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class has just come back from our school visit to Wadi el Gemal. We learned a lot about the ecosystem there. It's very hot and dry, but dorcas gazelles can live there. In summer they eat daffodils. They also eat the leaves of the acacia trees, which give them food and enough water. So, dorcas gazelles never need to drink. The gazelles eat the acacia seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow. So, gazelles are an important part of the ecosystem.

Review (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My class has just come back from our school .... to Wadi el Gemal.
   a) club b) visit c) lab d) library
2. It isn't .... in Wadi el Gemal.
   a) cold b) hot c) sunny d) heat
3. The underlined word "they" refers to ....
   a) schools b) camels c) classes d) gazelles

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why don't gazelles need to drink?

....

5. What do gazelles eat?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was a brave gazelle. ( )
2. Jubari met a turtle on the beach. ( )
3. Donga eats vegetables. ( )
4. Subira is Jubari's sister. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. .... Nasser is man-made.
2. Jubari met an .... in Gebel Elba.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If we .... to an oasis, we would see plants and trees.
   a) go b) went c) goes d) will go
2. Fares said he .... ride a bike.
   a) will b) can c) could d) can't
3. They like museums, ... they?
   a) are b) aren't c) do d) don't
4. I .... beans if I lived on a farm.
   a) grows b) would grow c) grow d) will grow
5. They said they .... going to buy a house.
   a) was b) has c) were d) had
6. The sky is going to rain, ... it?
   a) isn't b) is c) has d) hasn't

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. friends - Waleed - with - played - football - his - .

   ....

2. into space - stops - Gravity - people - flying up - .

   ....

3. you - would - What - you do - if - had - money - a lot of - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Salt

Guiding words:

(important - resource - sold - keep food - fresh - useful - lakes)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

FICTION READER: JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

جُوباري يبحث عن موطن



BY JENNIFER FARMER

The Story JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

Characters


Jubari (son)


Subira (mother)


dugong

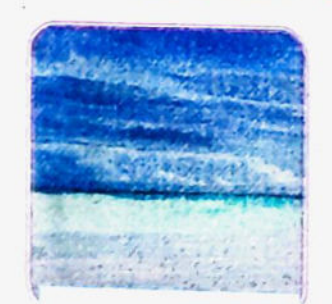

turtle


Ibex


crocodile

The Places


Wadi el Gemal


Ras Hankorab


Gebel Elba


The Red Sea mangrove


Lake Nasser

Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

The plot حبكة القصة

Jubari was a brave young dorcas gazelle. He was born in Wadi el Gemal. He left home to look for the " Wadi of the Gazelles". He went to lots of places and met many different animals. Jubari returned home because it is the best place to live in.

كان جوباري غزالًا صغيرًا شجاعًا. ولد في "وادي الجمال". غادر الموطن ليبحث عن "وادي الغزلان". ذهب لأماكن كثيرة وقابل حيوانات عديدة مختلفة ولكنه عاد لموطنة لأنه أفضل مكان يمكنه العيش فيه.

What is the moral of the story? ما الدرس المستفاد من القصة؟

- Animals are happier in the ecosystem they are born in.

تعيش الحيوانات أسعد في البيئة التي ولدت بها.

Picture Dictionary

acacia tree
شجرة السنط



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.

brave
شجاع



If you are brave, you are not afraid of dangerous or difficult situations.

daffodil
زهرة النرجس



Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.

hoof/ hooves
حوافر



A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

Nubian ibex
الماعز النوبي



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

salty
طعام مملح



Food with a lot of salt in it tastes salty.

seagrass
أعشاب بحرية



Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.

steep
منحدر



A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

The beginning



Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.

ولد غزال الصحراء "جوباري" في وادي الجمال في الصحراء الشرقية بمصر. وفي أول عام من حياته، رافق "جوباري" أمه "سوبيرا" وأوضحت له أي النباتات يأكلها وأين يرتاح في الأيام الحارة.

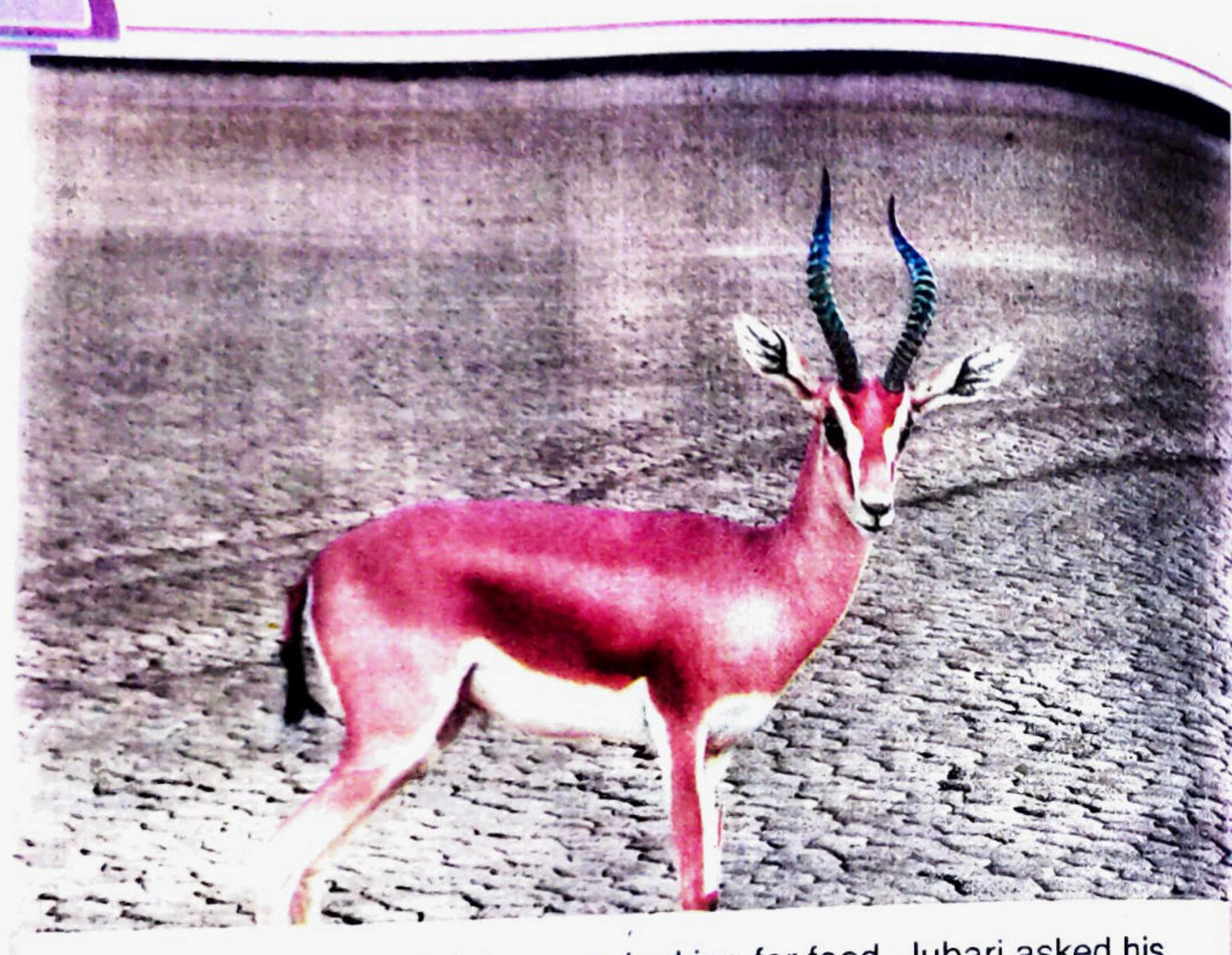


Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators. He learned to run away very quickly.

كان جوباري شجاعًا جدًا. وأراد أن يذهب إلى كل مكان ويلعب مع جميع الحيوانات. ومع ذلك، علمته سوبيرا أي الحيوانات خطيرة وكيف يبقى بعيدًا عن الحيوانات المفترسة. وتعلم أن يهرب بسرعة جدًا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called?"

Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means "Wadi of the Camels."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

وفي أحد الأيام كان "جوباري" و "سوبيرا" يبحثان عن الطعام. وسأل جوباري أمه قائلًا: " امي، ماذا يسمي هذا المكان؟"
فردت سوبيرا قائلة: "إنه وادي الجمال يا بني. وهذي يعني "وادي به جِمال".
قال جوباري: "ولِمَ نعيش في وادي الجمال؟ نحن غزلان". ضحكت سوبيرا وقالت "إنه مجرد اسم يا بني. فالعديد من
الحيوانات تعيش هنا. وادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان".

Help your child read and follow the events of the
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ





"Why?" Jubari said. "Well," said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."

"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."

قال جوباري، لِمَ؟ قالت أمه "يوجد نباتات مميزة هنا. أولًا، يوجد طعامنا المفضل، إنها زهور النرجس الصحراوية! كما يوجد أشجار السنط. وأوراقها تمدنا بالطعام والماء على مدار العام لذلك لا نحتاج أبدًا لأن نشرب. وكذلك فإن أشجار السنط تحتاجنا أيضا." قال جوباري: "ولِمَ تحتاجنا أشجار السنط؟" قالت الأم: "نحن نأكل بذورها وننقل هذه البذور لأماكن أخرى. وبهذا تنمو المزيد من أشجار السنط.".



"I understand," said Jubari.

"But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother." But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"

قال جوباري: "لقد فهمت، ولكن هل يوجد مكان يسمى وادي الغزلان؟ قالت أمه: "أنا لا أعرف." قال جوباري: "سأبحث عن ذلك المكان". قالت أمه، حسنا، لكن تذكر كل الأشياء التي علمتُك إياها وعد سريعًا".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
2. Jubari and Subira were looking for food.
3. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.
4. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
5. The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.
6. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

2 Read and complete the sentences.

1. Jubari was born in ....
2. When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which .... to eat.
3. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on .... days.
4. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was ....
5. They got enough water from ....

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?

....

2. What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?

....

3. What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi ?

....

4. What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi ?

....

5. How do gazelles help the acacia trees?

....

6. Why does Jubari leave the Wadi ?

....

The middle



Jubari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly. Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water! Jubari was thirty, so he tried to drink. "Yuck! " he said. The water was very, very salty. Then he heard a voice. "You can't drink that water! It's sea water."

قرر جوباري أن يتجه شرقا. كان متحمسا لذلك جرى بسرعة. وبعد قليل رأى بعض أنواع الأشجار الجديدة، ومشى بين الأشجار ثم توقف. كانت حوافره تحت الماء وكان عطشانًا، لذلك حاول أن يشرب وقال مشمئزا " يوك!" لقد كان الماء مالحا جدا جدا، ثم سمع صوت يقول" لا يمكنك أن تشرب من هذا الماء! إنه ماء بحر".

Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him.
"I'm Donga. I'm a dugong. I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea."
"I'm thirsty," said Jubari.
"Would you like some of myseagrass ?" said Donga.
Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said." But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the "Wadi of the Gazelles'?'"
"I'm sorry." said Donga. "I don't know."

نظر جوباري ووجد حيوانًا ضخمًا أبيضا في الماء. وكان ينظر إليه. قال الحيوان" أنا دونجا أنا حيوان الأطوم وأنا أعيش هنا في غابة المنجروف بالقرب من البحر الأحمر". قال جوباري "أنا عطشان". قال دونجا " أتود بعضًا من عشبي البحري؟" قام جوباري بأكل العشب البحري لكنه كان مالحا جدًا أيضا بالنسبة لي. وقال" أشكرك، لكن غابة المنجروف مالحة جدًا أيضا. هل تعرف أين أجد وادي الغزلان؟" قال دونجا " أسف، أنا لا أعرف."



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

... أحداث القصة.

Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran, soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly.
His hooves were going into the ground.
Then he heard a voice.
"Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."


بعد ذلك جرى جوباري تجاه الشمال، وجرى، وجرى .وبعد قليل وصل إلى مكان أرضه بيضاء وناعم جدًا. ومشى ببطء.
وغاصت حوافره في الأرض. ثم سمع صوتًا يقول" من فضلك لا تمشي هنا فإن بيضي في الرمال."



Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.
"I'm sorry," said Jubari.
"What is this place?"
"It's my home," said the turtle.
"Ras Hankorab beach."
"It's very nice," said Jubari.
"But it's not a good place for gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."

نظر جوباري. وكان ذلك صوت سلحفاة بنية. قال جوباري "أنا آسف. ما هذا المكان؟" قالت السلحفاة " هذا شاطئ رأس حانكوراب." قال جوباري" إنه مكان لطيف جدا. لكنه ليس مكانا جيدًا للغزلان. فلا يمكننا أن نجري بسرعة هنا لأن الرمال ناعمة جدًا."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.



Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains.
"I might see the 'Wadi of Gazelles' from the top," he thought.
Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very steep. His legs became very tired.

قرر جوباري أن يتجه للجنوب وجرى وجرى. حتى وصل إلى بعض الجبال واعتقد أنه ربما يرى وادي الغزلان من على القمة. تسلق جوباري أكبر جبل وكان شديد الانحدار. وأصاب سيقانه الإرهاق الشديد.



Then he saw an animal, a Nubian ibex.
Jubari said,"Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain?"
"Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."
"It's too steep for my legs,"said Jubari. "Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top?"
"I don't know that place." said the ibex. "But I can see a very big lake to the west!"

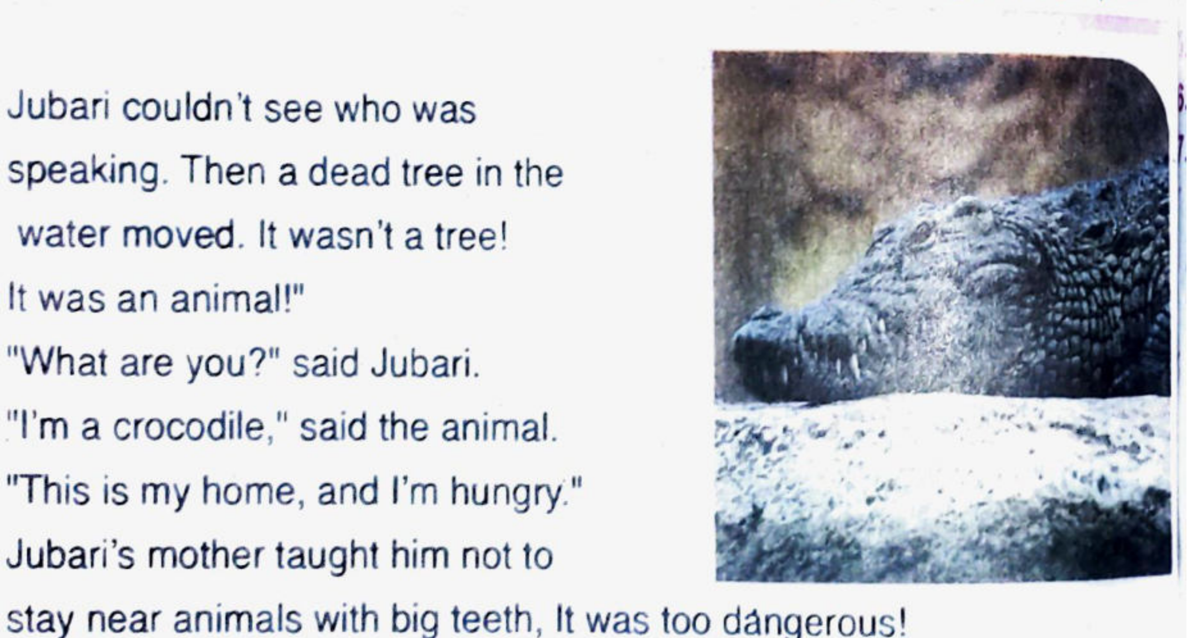
ثم رأى الوعل النوبي. قال جوباري " مرحبًا! هل كنت على قمة هذا الجبل؟ قال الوعل "نعم. هذا جبل علبه. إنه موطني" قال جوباري أنه شديد الانحدار بالنسبة لساقي؛ هل يمكنك أن ترى وادي الغزلان من على القمة؟" قال الوعل "أنا لا أعرف هذا المكان." لكن يمكنني أن أرى بحيرة ضخمة باتجاه الغرب."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.



Jubari thought, "I've gone east.
I've gone south and north, but
haven't gone west."
He ran and ran. After a long time,
he came to a very big lake.
"What is this place?" he said.
"This is Lake Nasser," said a voice.
"It's a man-made lake. The people
made it because they needed water.
It's an important resource for them.
But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

فكر جوباري قائلًا" لقد ذهبت تْجاه الشرق، وذهبت تجاه الجنوب والشمال لكن لم اذهب تجاه الغرب" ثم جرى وجرى. وبعد مدة طويلة وصل إلى بحيرة ضخمة جدًا وقال" ما هذا المكان ؟" ثم سمع صوتًا يقول " هذه بحيرة ناصر. إنها بحيرة من صنع الإنسان. لقد صنعها الناس لأنهم كانوا في حاجة إلى الماء. وهذا مصدر هام لهم. لكن الغزلان لذيذة الطعم لا يحتاجون إلى الماء، أليس كذلك؟"



Jubari couldn't see who was
speaking. Then a dead tree in the
water moved. It wasn't a tree!
It was an animal!"
"What are you?" said Jubari.
"I'm a crocodile," said the animal.
"This is my home, and I'm hungry."
Jubari's mother taught him not to
stay near animals with big teeth, It was too dángerous!

لم يستطع جوباري أن يرى المتحدث. ثم تحركت شجرة ميتة في الماء. إنها لم تكن شجرة! إنها كانت حيوان، قال جوباري "من أنت؟" قال الحيوان " أنا تمساح وهذا موطنى، وأنا جوعان"كانت أم جوباري قد علمته ألا يقترب من الحيوانات ذات الأسنان الضخمة. وكان هذا خطيرًا جدًا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The first animal Jubari met was a dugong. ( )
- The sea water was fresh. ( )
- The mangrove forest is too salty for Jubari. ( )
- Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach. ( )
- The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs. ( )
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake. ( )
- The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water. ( )

2 Read and complete the sentences.

- The sea water was very .... for Jubari.
- The .... lives in the mangrove forest.
- The turtle lays her eggs in the ....
- Jubari's .... were going into soft sand.
- .... lives in Gebel Elba.
- Gebel Elba is very .... for gazelles.
- The crocodile is a .... animal.
- The .... lives in Lake Nasser.

3 Answer the following questions.

- Where does the dugong live?

....

- What lives on the beach?

....

- Why did Jubari's legs become tired?

....

- Where does the Nubian ibex live?

....

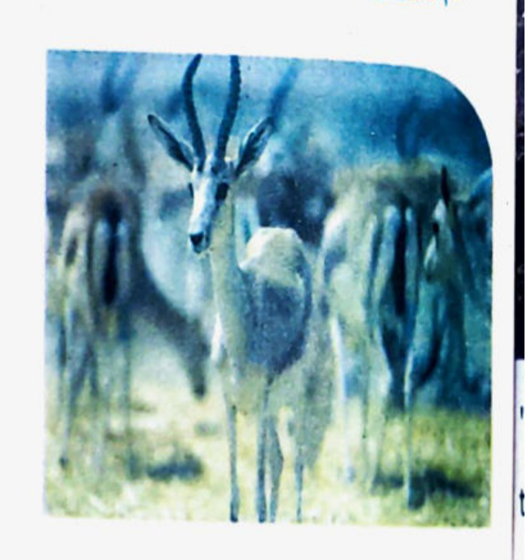
5. What does the crocodile look like?

....



He ran and ran .... all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

ثم جرى وجرى ...... طوال الطريق لموطنه في وادي الجمال.

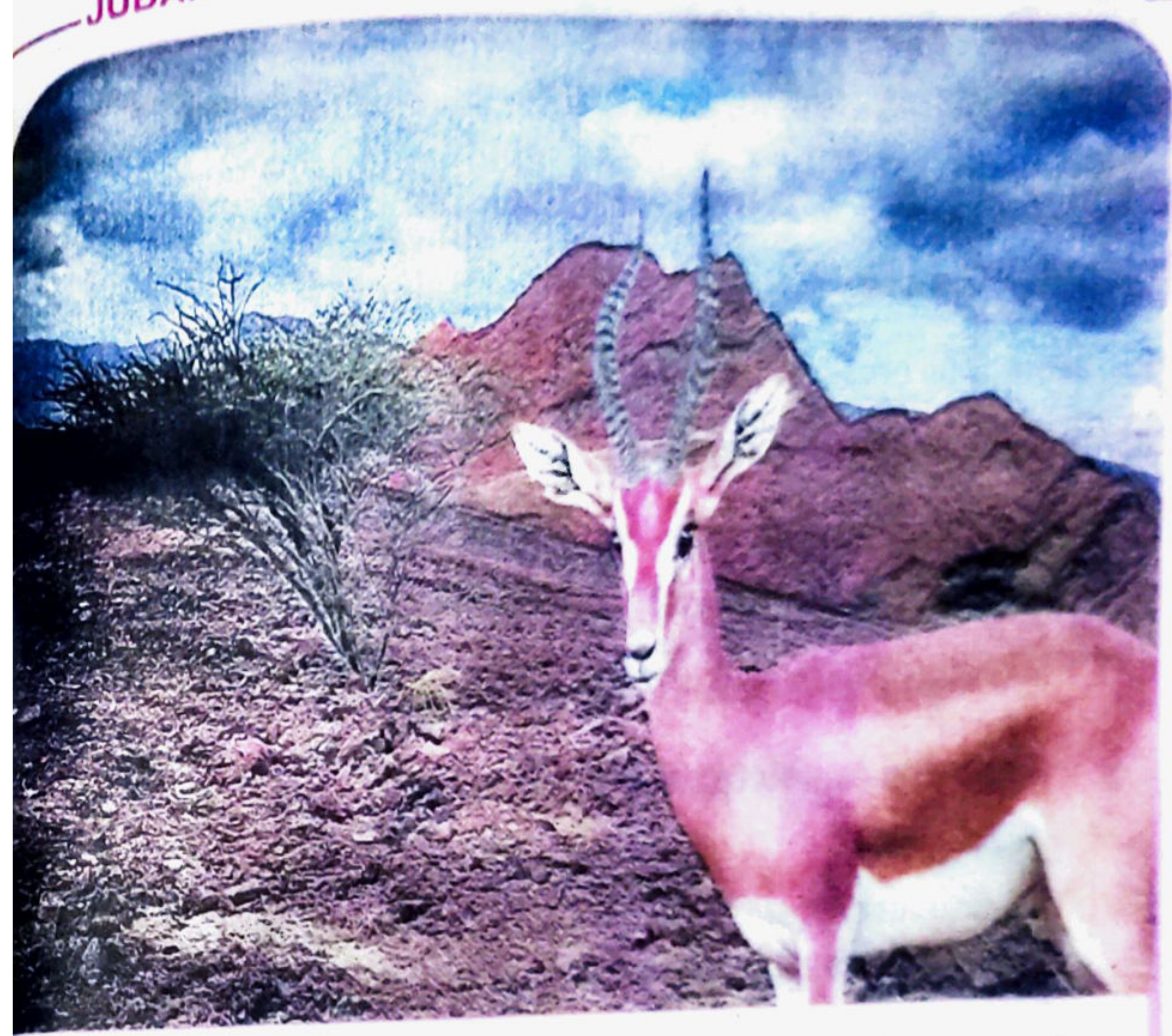


He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!" he cried. "Jubari, my brave and curious son. You are home," his mother said. Smiling, she asked, "Did you find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?" "No, I didn't. But I found a lot of other places."
"Did you like them?" his mother asked.
"Not all of them. The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.

وبدأ يبحث عن سوبيرا وهو يصرخ ويقول: " أمي ، أمي" قالت أمه وهي تبتسم: "جوباري ولدي الشجاع والفضولي. أنت الآن في موطنك. وسألته وهي تبتسم: "هل وجدت وادي الغزلان؟ قال جوباري: "لا، لم أجده. " لكني وجدت الكثير من الأماكن الأخرى" سألته أمه: "هل أحببت هذه الأماكن؟" قال جوباري: " ليس جميع الاماكن، فأشجار المنجروف كانت مالحة جدًا. والشاطئ كان مليئًا بالرمال. وكانت الجبال شديدة الانحدار. ولم يكن هناك الكثير من أشجار السنط.".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة



"Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us to run and run!"

"Yes," said Jubari. "You were right. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

"I'm so happy that you agree," she smiled.

قالت الأم: "حسنًا، لدينا الكثير من أشجار السنط هنا، والصحراء مكان ملائم (جدًا) لنا لكي نجري ونجري!" قال جوباري: "لقد كنت على حق، فوادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان." قالت الأم بابتسامة: "أنا سعيدة جدًا أنك توافقني الرأي".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari looked for Donga. ( )
2. Jubari was brave and curious. ( )
3. Jubari found Wadi el Gemal. ( )
4. The mangroves were too sweet. ( )
5. The beach was too sandy. ( )
6. There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert. ( )

2 Read and complete the sentences.

1. Jubari was .... and curious.
2. The mountains were too ....
3. The desert was a .... place for gazelles.
4. The .... was too sandy.
5. There were many .... trees in the desert.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What is the moral of the story?

....

2. Which ecosystem is very salty to Jubari?

....

3. What did Jubari look for at the end of the story?

....

4. Which ecosystem is too sandy for Jubari?

....

5. Did Jubari find Wadi of the Gazelles?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ☐

Jubari wanted to find the Wadi of the Camels. ☐

The first animal he met was a dugong. ☐

He met a turtle, who was swimming in the sea. ☐

He climbed down into a deep canyon. ☐

When he met a dangerous crocodile, he ran home. ☐

2 **Choose the correct answer.**

What did Subira teach Jubari to do if he met a dangerous animal?

a) Shout for help. b) Run away.

Which animal offered Jubari some seagrass?

a) A Nubian ibex. b) A dugong.

Why couldn't Jubari eat the seagrass?

a) It was too salty. b) It was too wet.

Why did the turtle ask Jubari not to walk on the sand?

a) His hooves were too big. b) Her eggs were in the sand.

Why was Ras Hankorab beach not a good place for gazelles?

a) The sand was too soft to walk on. b) The beach was too hot.

3 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Daffodils give gazelles food and water all year around.
2. Acacia trees need gazelles because they take their seeds to new places.
3. Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees.
4. Turtles lay their eggs in the sand.
5. Dorcas gazelles find it easy to climb to the top of very steep mountains.
6. Lake Nasser is a very big natural lake.
7. A crocodile can look like a dead tree in the water.
8. Gazelles and acacia trees are part of the ecosystem in Wadi el Gemal.

4 Read and circle.

1. Jubari and Subira live in ....

   a) Wadi el Gemal   b) the Wadi of the Gazelles

2. When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which .... to eat.

   a) animals   b) plants

3. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on .... days.

   a) hot   b) windy

4. Subira taught him which .... were dangerous.

   a) animals   b) places

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South ai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 meters of mangrove forest, which is the est in the Red Sea. We went there to n why mangrove forests are so ortant for the marine ecosystem. When arrived at the beach, we saw trees wing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow alt water, but mangrove trees can.

Lesson (3)

isten and choose the correct answer.

Malak wanted to learn more about the azon rainforest, because a lot of people cutting down the trees. The Amazon forest is a very important ecosystem. he living things in the rainforest need h other. Custard apple trees help many nals survive. The animals take the trees ds to other parts of the forest.

Lesson (4)

isten and choose the correct answer.

A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, lizard in a mangrove tree. She flew down l sat next to the lizard. The lizard looked l. People came and cut down some es. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult for the kingfisher and the lizard to find food.

Lesson (5)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish .Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Lesson (7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Waiting for the rain

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried.

Activities On Unit (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Your heart beats more over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Victoria Falls

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Kamal has been to many places with his parents. They saw heavy snow in the mountains, flood in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about extreme weather.

Activities On Unit (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Moun Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes,but they haven't erupted for thousands of years. It is the tallest mountain in Africa. It has lots of different ecosystems and at the top there is snow and ice.

Activities On Review (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Victoria Falls is an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi River. Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. The water makes a lot of noise as it falls!

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. Mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal.

Lesson (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mona and Heba are in the living room. They play a game. Mona's mom got something from the kitchen. Heba asks Mona to close her eyes. Mona picks up a soft banana and says it's not hard, I can bend it and it has an odor. It's a banana.

Lesson (7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today we're going to do a science experiment. You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions.

Listening Texts

Activities On Unit (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Grandpa showed the children a pair of shoes. "They don't look like normal shoes." said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes can do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

Lesson (5)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online.

Lesson (7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali is 10 years old. He lives in the 9th century. One day, He saw an inventor called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

Activities On Unit (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was travelling at 40 kilometres an hour. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

Activities (1) On Review (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

An oasis is a place in the desert which has lots of natural resources. If water didn't come from under the ground, the plants wouldn't grow. If you visited an oasis, you would see beautiful trees and flowers in the middle of the desert. People have lived in these oases for hundreds of years. Agriculture is very important and people can grow lots of different fruits and vegetables.

Activities (2) On Review (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

Model Answers

Let's remember

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1) homework 2) Presentation
3) blogs 4) vlogs

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) had 2) made 3) vlogs 4) man
5) largest 6) Reptiles 7) invertebrate
8) deaf 9) primary

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
2) Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
3) We're talking about recycling today.
4) We often eat our meals with bread.
5) What are you doing at the moment?

5) Punctuate the following.

- The store sells clothes jewelry and bags.
- Do Fares and Yasmine live in Luxor?
- Will you stay in Amman when you visit Jordan?

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Sinai 2) mangrove 3) marine 4) salt

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) trip 2) Sinai 3) marine 4) fish

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) largest 2) important 3) thick 4) survive
5) honey 6) interact 7) living 8) salt
9) protect 10) carbon dioxide
11) illnesses 12) interact

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Mangrove trees help young fish survive.
2) An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area.
3) Mangrove leaves are very thick.

5) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) ecosystem 2) animals 3) small

B) Answer the following questions.

4) It's all the animals and plants in an area.
5) To survive.

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The mangrove forests)

The mangrove forest is very important for the marine ecosystem. It is the largest forest in the Red Sea. The mangrove trees can grow in salt water. Their roots are deep to stop the sand washing away when there are storms. Their leaves are very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) who 2) where 3) which 4) who
5) which 6) who 7) who 8) where
9) which 10) who 11) where 12) which
13) who 14) where 15) who 16) which
17) where 18) who 19) where 20) who

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) who 2) who 3) which 4) who
5) which 6) where 7) who 8) which

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) ecosystem 2) living 3) survive 4) seeds

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) do 2) photographer
3) ecosystem 4) Custard apple

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) patient 2) down 3) beauty
4) patience 5) success 6) lucky 7) beauty
8) patience 9) ecosystem 10) seeds

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) People cut down trees in the rainforest.
2) The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.
3) Luck is also quiet important.
4) Your exhibition is a great success.
5) You need to have a lot of patience.

5) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) photographer 2) Malak 3) rainforest

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.
5) She wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The Amazon rainforest)

The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) kingfisher 2) sad 3) cut down 4) lizard

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) protect 2) food 3) Worried
4) Surprised 5) cut down 6) worried 7) bees

Model Answers

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) sad 2) hear 3) lizard

B) Answer the following questions.

4) In a mangrove tree.

5) Because people cut down trees.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The dugong says that the people are back.

2) How will you help the trees grow?

3) People came and cut down some trees.

4) Mangrove trees are part of the ecosystem.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) fish 2) sports 3) bike 4) relax

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) beats 2) heart 3) exercise 4) oxygen

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) veins and arteries 2) Arteries

3) Veins 4) oxygen and nutrients 5) sunlight

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) blood 2) sunlight 3) ill

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Our circulatory system.

5) Through arteries and veins.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I play sports with my friends.

2) How often does your heart beat?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep your heart healthy)

It is important to keep your heart healthy. To keep your heart healthy, eat healthy food like, fruit, vegetables, and fish. You should play sports with your friends. You must keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Lesson (6)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) sports center 2) volleyball

3) Fridays 4) and

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) because 2) so 3) and 4) but

5) and 6) but 7) and 8) because

9) so 10) and 11) because

12) but 13) because

3) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) but 2) because 3) but

4) and 5) so

4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

You should play sports with your friend if you want to be healthy. You should exercise regularly. Healthy food is also important. You should have healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish. You can play tennis or football. The football club is popular so there are always a lot of people.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) hot 2) Cub 3) sunshine 4) worried

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) grow 2) rain 3) hungry 4) falling

5) will 6) won't 7) will 8) can't

9) Can

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) grassland 2) Mother 3) club

B) Answer the following questions.

4) She felt worried.

5) The grass won't grow.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We will be very hungry.

2) They must wait for rain.

3) Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Grassland ecosystem)

The grassland is an important ecosystem. It is hot. Some animals live in grassland. When it rains, the grass grow. The animals will find their food. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. It's difficult for animals to find their food. All living things need each other to survive.

Activity on unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) beats 2) healthy 3) heart 4) exercise

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) blood 2) Arteries

3) oxygen 4) carbon dioxide

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) survive 2) mangrove trees 3) insects

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects and other animals.

5) Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) hot 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) so 2) who 3) where

4) which 5) but 6) because

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) What lives in mangrove forests?

2) Wael likes fish, but he doesn't like lamb.

3) Seleem eats healthy food like fruit.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Ecosystems)

There are different kinds of ecosystems. There are rainforest ecosystem, marine ecosystem, grassland ecosystem, freshwater ecosystem and forest ecosystem. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks and soil. They need each other to survive.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Zambezi 2) 1,708 3) high 4) noise

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) largest 2) countries 3) dunes 4) dry

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) volcanoes 2) Africa 3) thousand

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Mount Kilimanjaro

5) At the top of the mountain.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro?

2) The Sahara Desert is the hottest desert in the world.

3) The African continent is an amazing place.

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) crater 2) dunes 3) canyon

4) Erupt 5) valley

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The African Continent)

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Mount Kilimanjaro is one of them. It's the tallest mountain in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world.

Lesson (2)

The past simple

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) went 2) play 3) visited

4) did 5) didn't

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I made a cup of tea.

2) What did you eat yesterday?

3) Did you travel on a ship yesterday?

4) We did our homework an hour ago.

5) They didn't eat ful medames.

3) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) traveled 2) went 3) met

4) studied 5) traveled

The present perfect

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) has traveled 2) has told

3) has made 4) have never sailed 5) met

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Have you ever traveled to Luxor?

2) She has visited a traditional market.

3) Sara has never traveled to Aswan.

4) Have they ever visited another country?

5) He has never eaten saydeya.

3) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) seen 2) never 3) told

4) Has 5) ever

Activities

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) holiday 2) visited 3) travel 4) went

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) has eaten 2) haven't visited

3) Has 4) have told

5) traveled 6) Have you eaten

7) have 8) ever

9) have never 10) made

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) man-made 2) Egypt 3) Kings 4) history

2) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) centuries 2) South Africa 3) two

B) Answer the following questions.

4) The ruins of Great Zimbabwe.

5) South Africa and Namibia.

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) continent 2) wonders 3) Archaeologists

4) ruins 5) columns 6) adventure

7) temples 8) natural 9) caves

10) language 11) Walk

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The Sahara Desert wasn't dry in the past.

2) Visitors can see birds and monkeys in Rwanda.

3) There are 54 countries in Africa.

4) The natural world is beautiful in Africa.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) parents 2) snow 3) desert 4) weather

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) storm-chasers 2) hurricane

3) extreme 4) study

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) storm-chaser 2) thunderstorm

3) hurricane 4) flood

5) took 6) dust storm

7) won 8) weather

Model Answers

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Has he taken hundreds of photos?
2) Heavy snow fell on the mountain.
3) Storm-chasers are interested in thunderstorms.
4) They took some photos of the hurricane.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The storm-chaser)

The storm-chaser is the person who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather event to study it. He is a good photographer. He takes photos of floods, thunderstorms and dust storms. It's a very interesting job.

Lesson (5)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) island 2) lava 3) volcanoes 4) villages

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) lava 2) erupt 3) mud flow
4) soil 5) ash 6) island

3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The island of Java)

The island of Java is very pretty island, where almost everything is made of lava. It comes from Java's volcanoes, which look down on the villages below. When they erupt, there's ash and fire. Smoke fills the air. The lava and ash mix with mud flows. This makes soil where good food grows.

Lesson (6)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) arches 2) lake
3) sandstone 4) eroded

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) Bridge 2) eroded 3) ride 4) sun
5) formation 6) sandstone 7) summer 8) rocks

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) geological 2) limestone 3) 120

B)Answer the following questions.

4) The Pinnacles.
5) Early in the morning or late afternoon.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Rainbow Bridge is 200 million years old.
2) A river eroded a hole in the sand stone.
3) The monument is in a very hot desert.
4) Don't forget to take your water bottle.

Lesson (7)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) tickets 2) balloon 3) excited 4) statues

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) ribbon 2) light 3) gentle 4) baskets
5) Flame 6) pilot

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Mariam loved watching birds.
2) The book is about hot air balloon flights.
3) Would you like to have a ride?

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) birds 2) Luxor 3) excited

B)Answer the following questions.

4) It was a diary. 5) Mariam's dad

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A trip on a hot air balloon)

I went on a trip to Luxor. I had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I found the diary of the pilot. He lit the flame. The weather was perfect, with no rain and a gentle wind. We flew over the statues and temples.

Activity on unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) three 2) years 3) Africa 4) snow

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) grandparents 2) storm-chasers
3) hurricane 4) weather

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) Bridge 2) 1910 3) spring

B)Answer the following questions.

4) It is 88 meters tall.
5) You have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

4) The Reader.

A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

3) salty 4) white

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) never 2) did 3) ever
4) visited 5) been 6) ate

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Have Kamal's parents been to Sudan?
2) We have got tickets for the festival.
3) The Sahara Desert covers eleven countries.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A man-made wonder)

There are many man-made wonders in Egypt. The Sphinx is one of them. The Ancient Egyptian built it at Giza. It has the head of a man and a body of a lion. It is fantastic. Tourists from all over the world come and watch it. There are others in Africa and Egypt.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) River 2) five 3) eroded 4) water

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) man-made 2) Archaeologists
3) natural 4) volcano

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) rainforest 2) calm 3) scare

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Monkeys, snakes, birds, and gorillas.

5) You must be very quiet.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

3) salty 4) sandy

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) saw 2) been 3) because

4) who 5) and 6) where

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The beautiful natural world is in Africa.

2) The Amazon rainforest is an important ecosystem.

3) There are many volcanoes on Java Island.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Healthy Habits)

I get up at six o'clock. I have healthy breakfast to be healthy. I walk every day and I play sports with my friends. I like healthy food like fruit and vegetables. I go to bed early because I don't want to be tired in the morning.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Marsa Alam 2) car

3) gold 4) raw

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Marsa Alam 2) What 3) mine 4) Can

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) state 2) boil 3) liquid 4) freeze

5) gas 6) solid 7) solid 8) fixed

9) solid 10) raw 11) wood 12) fossil

13) Gases

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) boiled 2) steam 3) froze 4) ice

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A solid has a fixed shape.

2) The sun gives us solar energy.

3) When you boil water, it turns to steam.

6) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) natural resources 2) Gold 3) natural

B) Answer the following questions.

4) The sun

5) Because when we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural resources)

There are two kind of resources. They are renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind. They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy. Non-renewable energy isn't clean. When we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

Lesson (2)

Conditional (if)

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) would 2) snowed 3) saw

4) will 5) found 6) would

7) met 8) will 9) has 10) would

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) will 2) didn't 3) takes

4) would 5) catch 6) won't 7) had

Activities

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) mountains 2) bones 3) digging 4) shovel

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) bones 2) digging 3) in

4) skeletons 5) shovel 6) will

7) had 8) would 9) stay

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) last week 2) 8 3) classmates

B) Answer the following questions.

4) We saw really big dinosaur skeletons.

5) It is fantastic.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) They are going to the mountains.

2) What would you do if you had a bike?

3) I found some dinosaur bones.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum)

I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum. I went with my friends. We went by school bus. We saw really big dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting information about dinosaurs. We came back home at eight o'clock.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Egyptians 2) important 3) eyes 4) bees

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) at 2) successful 3) economy 4) fertile

5) flax 6) fresh 7) bend 8) hives

9) medicine 10) mud

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) honey 2) hives 3) cheap

B) Answer the following questions.

4) They put honey on the cut.

5) So that the bees could find new flowers.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The Nile flooded and made the soil fertile.

2) People used flax to make linen.

Model Answers

3) Ancient Egypt was very successful.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Honey)

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt. They used honey to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. Bees lived in houses made of clay. The bee houses are called hives. People moved the hives, so the bees could find new flowers.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) living room 2) moon 3) her eyes 4) banana

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) Blind 2) odor 3) sticky 4) mass
5) gas 6) liquid 7) Steam
8) comfortable 9) sticky 10) hard

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) blind 2) happy 3) comfortable

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Because her cousin has just arrived from Alex.
5) It is rough, and it has an odor.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The glue is sticky.
2) Welcome to my house.
3) What are the chairs like?

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A description of a strawberry)

Strawberry is a delicious fruit. It has a red color. It is a solid. It has a soft touch. You can feel the texture of the strawberry. It's soft but you can't bend it. It's a healthy fruit.

Lesson (5)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) do 2) experiment 3) pour 4) mix

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) do 2) container 3) detergent 4) sticky
5) layer 6) syringe 7) liquid 8) sink
9) floats 10) syrup

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) on foot 2) 5 3) sink

B) Answer the following questions.

4) A science experiment.
5) Because it is interesting.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Honey is thick and sticky.
2) The heavier liquids sink to the bottom.
3) Milk and water are liquids.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A science Experiment)

Today we're going to do a science experiment. What happens when we pour different liquids into one container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

Lesson (6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) went 2) waterfalls 3) flamingo 4) enjoy

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) on 2) oasis 3) bird
4) coastline 5) orchards 6) on
7) busy 8) farming

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Damietta 2) popular 3) vacation

B) Answer the following questions.

4) They are places where fruit trees are grown.
5) Its history.

4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A school trip)

I went to a school trip last Friday. I went with my friends. We went to Alexandria Library. We went by school bus. We met the librarian and saw many books. They library is fantastic. It's very enormous. We enjoyed a lot. We learnt more about its history.

Lesson (7)

Reported speech

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) liked 2) had 3) could
4) would 5) was 6) can

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) loves 2) can 3) worked
4) liked 5) was 6) wanted

3) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) could 2) played 3) said
4) would 5) went

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) experiment 2) groups
3) solid 4) answer

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) with 2) liquid 3) could
4) went 5) liked 6) was
7) go 8) can 9) need 10) was

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) subject 2) Science 3) school

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He went on a school trip to the Science Museum.
5) About the environment.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Do you need to borrow a calculator?
2) I like visiting the park.
3) Let's do a science experiment.

4) Mom said it was cold and rainy.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A visit to the museum)

I went to a visit to the museum. I went with my family. We went in our father's car. We saw many old things that were precious. We enjoyed our trip a lot because it was amazing. We went back home tired but we were happy.

Activity on unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) mud 2) Nile 3) bricks 4) strong

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Alexandria 2) train 3) visited 4) enjoy

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) city 2) early 3) one

B) Answer the following questions.

4) The traffic is always busy on her way to school.

5) Big and very exciting.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

3) Lake 4) teeth

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) ate 2) will 3) had

4) would 5) could 6) goes

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Coal and gas are non-renewable resources.

2) People make linen from flax.

3) Who liked honey in ancient Egypt?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Papyrus)

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. They had papyrus. They used this strong plant to make things such as basket and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of first books In the world using it.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) bus 2) Dad 3) thanked 4) friends

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) bike 2) cycle 3) science 4) pedals

5) brakes 6) speed 7) up 8) brakes

9) pull 10) cycling

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) bus 2) arrive 3) Dad

B) Answer the following questions.

4) At 40 kilometers an hour.

5) I talked to my friends.

4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Your new bike)

My birthday is today. My parents bought me a new bike as a present They teach me how to ride the bike. I learned how to move it. I push the pedals to move the bike. To make the bike stop, I use the brakes. If I want to increase the speed, I push the pedals more quickly.

Lesson (2)

Question tag

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) is 2) did 3) will

4) can't 5) won't

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) won't 2) live 3) can't 4) went

Activities

1) Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

1) what 2) scientist 3) gravity 4) didn't

2) Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

1) friction 2) pull 3) slowly

4) smaller 5) space

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) Friction 2) tension 3) Air resistance

4) Spring force 5) Gravity 6) didn't they

7) can't they 8) will he 9) is it

10) they

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) It won't rain tomorrow, will it?

2) Your mom doesn't speak French, does she?

3) She didn't have chicken, did she?

5) Complete the question tags.

1) does 2) won't 3) can't

4) did 5) don't

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) paper 2) vertically 3) over 4) dart

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) piece 2) top 3) tip 4) down

3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A Dart paper airplane)

To make a paper airplane. Fold a piece of paper in half vertically. Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it. Fold down the two wings. Your dart is ready to fly.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) shoes. 2) normal 3) hill 4) excited

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) up 2) higher 3) sides 4) feeling

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Grandpa [illegible]

Model Answers

2) Do you have something to show us?
3) The children enjoy flying above the village.
4) Leaves fall to the ground in fall.

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) pulls 2) shoes 3) special

B) Answer the following questions.

4) To watch his favorite football team. 5) Gravity.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) engineer 2) robots 3) making 4) thirteen

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) astronaut 2) float 3) Engineers
4) science 5) pilot 6) Air resistance

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) She has good computer skills.
2) An architect designs new buildings.
3) We can travel on an aircraft.

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) pilot 2) health 3) Dalia

B) Answer the following questions.

4) She enjoys traveling.
5) She likes working with people and she'd like to work in medicine.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Your future job)

I like science very much. I want to be an engineer when I grow up. It is an interesting job. An engineer can design new buildings. He can make bridges. An engineer doesn't make buildings and bridges only. An engineer also helps make things such as skateboards.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1) 10 2) century 3) wood 4) first

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) builder 2) invented 3) land
4) feathers 5) inventor

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Abbas Ibn Firnas was a inventor.
2) He used wings to fly like birds.
3) He invented water clocks.

4) Read the text and answer the questions

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) time 2) fly 3) young

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He was an important person who invented many things. 5) No,he didn't

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Abbas Ibn Firnas)

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor in the 9th century. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

Activity on unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) bus 2) door 3) hour 4) Dad

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) programs 2) making 3) company 4) own

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) inventor 2) clocks 3) wood

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He jumped from a tower.
5) Because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T

B) Answer the following questions.

1) el Gemal 2) acacia

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) isn't 2) don't 3) won't
4) can 5) have 6) didn't

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) You use a push force to jump.
2) Without speed you will fall over the bike.
3) I am interested in stars and planets.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Gravity)

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When the boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

Activities (1) on Review (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer

1) desert 2) hundreds
3) Agriculture 4) vegetables

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) engineer 2) job
3) factory 4) luck

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) water 2) 9th 3) hundred

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Abbas Ibn Firnas. 5) Al-Maqata.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).

1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) run away 2) dugong

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) has 2) isn't 3) went

4) don't 5) didn't 6) went

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Without using the pedals you will fall over the bike.
2) A glass window has a rough texture.
3) They used honey as a medicine.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A job you'd like to do)

When I grow up, I want to be an architect. This is the job I like. It is interesting. I like drawing and making things so I want to be an architect. The architect can design many houses. He also can design building and houses.

Activities (2) on Review (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) copper 2) bend
3) tools 4) Egyptian

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Agriculture 2) Egypt
3) fertile 4) crops

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) visit 2) cold 3) gazelles

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Because the acacia trees give them food and enough water. 5) Acacia seed.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).

1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) Lake 2) ibex

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) went 2) could 3) don't
4) would grow 5) were 6) isn't

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Waleed played football with his friend.
2) Gravity stops people flying up into space.
3) What would you do if you had a lot of money?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Salt)

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt.

The story

Activities (P. 224)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

1) T 2) T 3) T 4) F
5) T 6) F

2) Read and complete the sentences.

1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants 3) hot
4) daffodil- 5) the acacia tree

3) Answer the following questions.

1) She taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators.
2) The Wadi of the Camels.
3) Daffodil and acacia.
4) The acacia tree leaves give them water.
5) They take their seeds to new places.
6) To look for the Wadi of the Gazelles.

Activities (P. 229)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F
5) T 6) F 7) T

2) Read and complete the sentences.

1) salty 2) dugong 3) sand
4) hooves 5) Ibex 6) steep
7) dangerous 8) crocodile

3) Answer the following quest ions.

1) In the mangrove forest. 2) The turtle.
3) Because the mountain was very steep.
4) In Gebel Elba. 5) A dead tree.

Activities (P. 232)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

1) F 2) T 3) F 4) F
5) T 6) T

2) Read and complete the sentences.

1) brave 2) steep 3) perfect
4) beach 5) acacia

3) Answer the following questions.

1) To listen to your parent's advice.
2) Marine ecosystem. / Mangrove trees.
3) He looked for Subira.
4) Coastal ecosystem.
5) No, he didn't.

General Activities (P. 233)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

1) T 2) F 3) T
4) F 5) F 6) T

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) Run away 2) A dugong 3) It was too salty.
4) Her eggs were in the sand.
5) The sand was too soft to walk on.

3) Read and write Yes or No.

1) No 2) Yes 3) No 4) Yes
5) No 6) No 7) Yes 8) Yes

4) Read and circle.

1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants
3) hot 4) animals



CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision

Unit (1) Life in my world



Ecosystems

grassland	المراعى / أرض عُشبية	animals	حيوانات
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	species	أنواع / فصائل
freshwater	ماء عذب	soil	تربة زراعية
living things	كائنات حية	thick	سميك
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	canopy	مظلة
Amazon rainforests	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	community	مجتمع



Animals

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	worm	دودة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	cub	شبل
lizard	سحلية	buzzing bees	طنين النحل



The heart

arteries	شرايين	oxygen	أكسجين
veins	أوردة	beat	يدق / ينبض
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood	دم

Others

salt water	ماء مالح	wadi	وادي
mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف	illnesses	أمراض
custard apple tree	شجرة تفاح الكاسترد	diseases	أمراض
medicinal plant	نبات طبي	interact	يتفاعل
survive	ينجو / يبقى علي قيد الحياة	pollen	حبوب اللقاح

Adjective		Abstract Noun	
beautiful	جميل	beauty	الجمال
patient	صبور	patience	الصبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	الحظ
successful	ناجح	success	النجاح

Help your child revise unit (1). ساعد طفلك أن براجع الوحدة الأولى.

Relative Clauses

who الذي / التي (للعاقل) **for people**

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which الذي / التي (لغير العاقل) **for things**

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem which is normally dry.

where حيث (للمكان) **for places**

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

Linking Words

and

We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

but

Hany likes basketball, but he doesn't like football.

because

Salma goes to the pool because she likes swimming.

so

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our veins and arteries carry .... around bodies.
   a) water   b) food   c) carbon dioxide   d) blood
2. .... move blood away from our heart.
   a) Arteries   b) Veins   c) Hearts   d) Stomach
3. .... carry blood to the heart.
   a) Oxygen   b) Veins   c) Stomach   d) Arteries
4. We don't use .... like plants do.
   a) oxygen   b) blood   c) carbon dioxide   d) water

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Seleem loves ....
   a) sports   b) money   c) English   d) math
2. He eats .... food.
   a) snack   b) healthy   c) unhealthy   d) fast
3. He doesn't eat much ....
   a) apples   b) bananas   c) meat   d) chocolate
4. In the evening, he wants to ....
   a) sleep   b) run   c) relax   d) study

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

insects - fish - living - area - desert

Toka : What is an ecosystem, Roqia?
Roqia : It is all the animals and plants in an 1) ....
Toka : Which ecosystems do we have in Egypt?
Roqia : We have a 2) .... ecosystem and a marine ecosystem.
Toka : What are some of the 3) .... things in a marine ecosystem?
Roqia : They are 4) .... and whales.
Toka : Thanks for your information.
Roqia : You're welcome.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sunlight - protect - food - happy - sad

Humans need sunlight,too. We can't make our own 1) .... , but we get vitamin (D) from 2) .... This can help 3) .... us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel 4) ....

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. We went <u>there</u> to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very <u>thick</u>. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The mangrove forests are very important for the .... ecosystem.
   a) desert b) marine c) sand d) grassland
2. The mangrove trees grow on .... water.
   a) cold b) hot c) salty d) sweet
3. The underlined word " **thick**" is the opposite of ....
   a) big b) tall c) thin d) large

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to?

....

5. What is special about the roots and leaves of the mangrove trees?

....

4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The .... of a mangrove tree are thick.
   a) stems b) roots c) leaves d) flowers
2. Fish and animals are .... things.
   a) living b) dead c) non-living d) abstract
3. Stones and rocks are .... things.
   a) living b) non-living c) survive d) thick
4. Many ...., bees and other insects live in mangrove forests.
   a) camels b) bears c) dogs d) butterflies
5. Mangrove forests .... the marine ecosystem.
   a) protect b) kill c) damage d) destroy
6. The plants, animals, and insects .... with each other to survive.
   a) kill b) protect c) fight d) interact
7. Sara doesn't wait because she isn't a .... person.
   a) patience b) patient c) success d) luck
8. There is so much .... in the Amazon rainforest.
   a) beauty b) beautiful c) success d) successful
9. Hany's exhibition was a great ....
   a) success b) successful c) patient d) beautiful
10. .... is also important.
    a) Lucky b) Luck c) Patient d) Successful
11. .... move blood away from our heart.
    a) Veins b) Arteries c) Blood d) Muscles
12. We can get vitamin D from ....
    a) sunlight b) moonlight c) water d) blood
13. It's important to keep your heart ....
    a) healthy b) unhealthy c) weak d) slow
14. We need .... and oxygen in our blood.
    a) nutrients b) carbon c) gas d) air

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. This is a lizard .... lives in the Egyptian desert.
   a) which b) where c) who d) when
2. This is a medicinal plant .... helps people with coughs.
   a) who b) where c) when d) which
3. This is wadi .... different animals live.
   a) where b) when c) which d) who
4. This is a person .... lives in Cairo.
   a) which b) who c) where d) when
5. This is Ali .... lives in Giza.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
6. This is a place .... it sometimes snows.
   a) where b) who c) when d) what
7. The Sinai Peninsula is a place .... red foxes live.
   a) who b) when c) what d) where
8. Is Mona the girl .... always draws pictures of animals?
   a) when b) which c) where d) who
9. I don't play basketball, ... I play football.
   a) so b) and c) but d) because
10. I'm going to the sports center .... it's basketball club today.
    a) because b) but c) so d) and
11. It's Friday .... my brother doesn't go to school.
    a) who b) which c) when d) where
12. I love football .... I love tennis, too.
    a) but b) because c) and d) so
13. He wants to be healthy, ... he plays a lot of sports.
    a) but b) because c) and d) so
14. Ali eats a healthy diet, ... he exercises every day.
    a) but b) so c) because d) and

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. does - your - How - beat - often - heart - ?

....

2. says - that - the people - The dugong - back - are - .

....

3. you - aunt - my - Do - know - lives - who - Alex - in - ?

....

4. lives - the - What - mangrove - forests - in - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy - fruit - vegetables - exercise - unhealthy - chocolate - relax)

....

....

....

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Our heart

Guiding elements:

(beats - keep - exercise - minerals - oxygen)

....

....

....

Unit (2) Look around you

Vocabulary

valley	وادى	crater	فوهة بركان
canyon	وادٍ ضيق - منحدر	dunes	كثبان (رملية)
wetlands	أراضي رطبة - مستنقعات	erode	ينحت - يفتت
erupt	يثور	storm-chaser	متتبع العواصف
hurricane	إعصار	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
flood	فيضان	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	mountain	جبل
coast	ساحل	grassland	أرض عشبية
excited	مسرور - متحمس	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
archaeologist	عالم آثار	ruins	أطلال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	columns	أعمدة
lava	حمم بركانية	soil	تربة زراعية
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	رماد
arch	قوس	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
light - lit	يشعل - أشعل	flame	لهب - شعلة
pilot	طيار	hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
ribbon	شريط		

Natural Wonders

The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو
Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا	Ngorongoro Crater	فوهة بركان نجورونجورو

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I've played tennis.

e.g. She has eaten pizza.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. He hasn't slept early.

Question

Yes, No question

Have / Has + subject + P.P .....?

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

e.g. Has he ridden a bike?

Wh-question

Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P .....?

e.g. Where have you been?

- I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just I've just met my teacher.

ever Have you ever seen a lion?

never No, I've never seen a lion.

already She's already fed the hens.

She's fed the hens already.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... continent has the most famous natural wonders in the world.
   a) Asian b) European c) Australian d) African
2. The Ngorongoro Crater is in ....
   a) Cairo b) London c) Tanzania d) America
3. The .... formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago.
   a) crater b) character c) cubs d) cups
4. The crater is about .... square kilometers.
   a) 260 b) 240 c) 620 d) 640

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rainbow .... is one of the largest arches in the world.
   a) Bridge b) River c) Lake d) Sea
2. It's also .... million years old.
   a) 20 b) 200 c) 2000 d) 20000
3. It's 88 meters ....
   a) long b) wide c) tall d) deep
4. It's in a very .... desert.
   a) small b) cool c) cold d) hot

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

big - buffaloes - reading - Tanzania - ants

Sama : What are you doing now?
Toka : I'm 1) .... a book about natural wonders. The Ngorongoro crater is one of them.
Sama : In which country is it?
Toka : It's in 2) ....
Sama : How 3) .... is it?
Toka : It's about 260 square kilometers.
Sama : Are there any animals?
Toka : Yes, there are many big animals like elephants, 4) .... , and leopards.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

eroded - noise - River - canyon - Sea

The Victoria Falls are an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi 1) .... Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big 2) .... which the water has 3) .... The water makes a lot of 4) .... as it falls.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Pinnacles are unusual geological formation in Western ....
   a) Australia b) Africa c) Europe d) America
2. The underlined word "August" is a ....
   a) day b) season c) month d) sport
3. The Pinnacles are made of white ....
   a) wood b) metal c) plastic d) limestone

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How old are the Pinnacles?

....

5. How high are the tallest columns?

....



4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The Ngorongoro Crater is the largest .... crater in the world.
   a) canyon b) valley c) volcanic d) dune
2. Inside the Ngorongoro Crater there are forests and ....
   a) deserts b) wetlands c) clubs d) dunes
3. The Sahara Desert covers .... countries.
   a) eight b) nine c) eleven d) six
4. The Sahara Desert is very ....
   a) cold b) warm c) snowy d) hot
5. Water has changed the .... of Victoria Walls.
   a) place b) shape c) color d) crater
6. The .... is a hill made of sand shaped by the wind.
   a) dune b) valley c) canyon d) wetland
7. To .... is to change or destroy by rain, wind or the sea, etc.
   a) erode b) erupt c) snow d) rain
8. The .... is an area of land that is often covered by water.
   a) dune b) valley c) wetland d) canyon
9. When volcanoes .... , fire and rocks come out of the top.
   a) erode b) erupt c) erose d) make
10. .... is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow.
    a) Stem b) Leaf c) Soil d) Ash
11. .... is hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
    a) Soil b) Ash c) Mud flow d) Lava
12. A .... is soft wet material that moves down mountains.
    a) mud flow b) soil c) ash d) lava
13. A .... is a long soft piece of material.
    a) flame b) ribbon c) basket d) light
14. People use a .... to carry things.
    a) flame b) basket c) ribbon d) light

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. Waleed has .... by bus.
   a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling
2. Aya has never .... a famous person.
   a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting
3. Amir and Fares .... tennis before.
   a) hasn't played b) has played c) haven't played d) playing
4. .... Fares ever traveled by train?
   a) Has b) Is c) Have d) Are
5. Have Youssef and Wael .... an elephant?
   a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
6. Has Mom .... made fesikh for Sham El-Nessim?
   a) ever b) never c) just d) already
7. Have they ever .... another country?
   a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
8. Have you .... saydeya?
   a) eats b) ate c) eaten d) eating
9. Has Kamal .... to the desert?
   a) be b) been c) being d) to be
10. Was Kamal frightened when he .... his first hurricane?
    a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
11. He .... the first prize for photographers aged 10.
    a) won b) have won c) winning d) win
12. Have you ever seen a volcano? - Yes, ...
    a) I have b) I haven't c) have I d) have you
13. Kamal has .... a photo of many extreme weather events.
    a) took b) taken c) takes d) taking
14. Kamal has .... in a dangerous situation.
    a) been never b) never been c) ever been d) be

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. continent - The - African - place - an amazing - is - .

....

2. you - Have - traveled - a - ship - on - ?

....

3. this - story - I - have - told - you - already - .

....

4. is - special - What - about - the - Java - of - Island - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Sahara Desert

Guiding elements:

(natural - wonders - largest - eleven countries - sand dunes)

....

....

....

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Man-made wonders of Africa

Guiding elements:

(incredible - Egypt - the Pyramids - The Sphinx - visit)

....

....

....

Unit (3) How we use our world

Natural resources موارد طبيعية

coal	فحم	date	بلح	economy	الاقتصاد
fertile	خصبة	flax	نبات الكتان	mine	منجم
mud	طين	pale	شاحب اللون	renewable	متجدد
raw materials	مواد خام	linen	قماش الكتان	non-renewable	غير متجدد

States of water حالات الماء

liquid	سائل	solid	صلب	gas	غاز
boil	يغلي	freeze	يتجمد	melt	يذوب
fixed shape	شكل ثابت				

Physical properties خصائص فيزيائية

bend	يطوي	hard	جامد - صلب	mass	الكتلة
odor	رائحة	rough	خشن	soft	ناعم
sticky	لزج	texture	نسيج / ملمس		

Stories قصص

dig	يحفر	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	hole	حفرة
sink	يغطس / يغوص	shovel	جاروف	tunnel	نفق
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	expert	خبير	blind	أعمى

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

First Conditional

Form: If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage: **We use the first conditional:**

⇨ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

Second Conditional

Form: If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage: **We use the second conditional:**

⇨ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

Reported speech

Direct speech

الكلام المباشر

The words that a person says.

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

Reported speech

الكلام الغير المباشر (الكلام المنقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

Notice the changes

لاحظ التغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

1. Change the subject according to the speaker.
2. Change the verb from present to past.
3. We don't use speech marks.

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People kept .... to make honey in ancient Egypt.
   a) birds   b) bees   c) cars   d) chickens
2. People used honey to make food taste ....
   a) sour   b) sweet   c) sugary   d) bad
3. They used honey as a .... too.
   a) medicine   b) plant   c) clay   d) mud
4. They put bees in a house called ....
   a) knives   b) hives   c) lives   d) wives

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People in ancient Egypt use .... to build houses.
   a) mud   b) stones   c) glass   d) sand
2. They took mud from the ....
   a) Desert   b) Nile   c) Lake   d) Sea
3. People used mud and made it into .... bricks.
   a) circle   b) round   c) square   d) rectangle
4. These bricks were .... and strong when they were dried.
   a) soft   b) cool   c) easy   d) hard

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

important - cotton - clothes - flax - gold

Noha : What did people use to make linen?
Nada : They used 1) ....
Noha : Why did people use linen?
Nada : They used it to make 2) ....
Noha : Was it 3) .... ?
Nada : Yes, it was.
Noha : Is your dress made of linen?
Nada : No, it's made of 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ... هذه الأسئلة.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Delta - fresh - countries - medicine - desert

Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians sold it to other 1) .... , too. People used it to keep food 2) .... It was also useful in 3) .... and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile 4) .... had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our class went on a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El ....
   a) Rayan b) Degla c) Melook d) Kings
2. The opposite of the underlined word "top" is ....
   a) high b) bottom c) fast d) behind
3. The waterfalls are .... meters high.
   a) seventy-six b) sixty-seven c) ninety-seven d) seventy-nine

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does water come from?

....

5. How many lakes are there in Wadi El Rayan?

....

4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The sun and water are .... sources.
   a) non-renewable b) renewable c) old d) new
2. If you .... water, it turns into steam.
   a) cool b) freeze c) boil d) drink
3. If you .... water, it turns into ice.
   a) melt b) heat c) boil d) freeze
4. To dig a hole in the mountains, take a ....
   a) towel b) pot c) shadow d) shovel
5. They made linen for clothes from ....
   a) gold b) wood c) flax d) metal
6. .... is easy to bend.
   a) Gold b) Copper c) Iron d) Supper
7. Egyptians used .... as a medicine.
   a) salt b) water c) honey d) milk
8. The ancient Egyptians made paper from ....
   a) papyrus b) dates c) flax d) gold
9. People in ancient Egypt used .... to build houses.
   a) gold b) coal c) mud d) salt
10. A .... person can't see.
    a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) funny
11. The old cheese has a bad ....
    a) mass b) odor c) rough d) texture
12. The glue is thick and ....
    a) rough b) hard c) sticky d) difficult
13. Ice is a ....
    a) gas b) liquid c) solid d) steam
14. Today, we're going to .... a science experiment
    a) make b) do c) play d) eat

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. If I visited the museum, I .... be happy.
   a) will b) would c) can d) may
2. If I .... a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say.
   a) meet b) met c) meets d) meeting
3. If I have enough money, I .... buy a car.
   a) will b) would c) could d) might
4. If I .... Cairo, I would go to the Egyptian Geological Museum.
   a) visit b) visits c) visited d) visiting
5. If I .... in a hot air balloon, I wouldn't be frightened.
   a) fly b) flies c) flew d) flying
6. If it .... hot outside, I wouldn't go out.
   a) is b) was c) are d) am
7. If we go to the museum, we .... see dinosaur bones.
   a) would b) could c) will d) might
8. If you put a stone on water, it will ....
   a) sink b) sinks c) sank d) sinking
9. Omar said he .... reading comics.
   a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
10. Soha said she usually .... fruit for breakfast.
    a) have b) has c) had d) having
11. Amira said she .... play the guitar.
    a) could b) can c) may d) will
12. Adel said he .... walk to school.
    a) will b) would c) may d) can
13. Waleed said he .... going to play tennis.
    a) is b) are c) am d) was
14. Mona said she .... to the park.
    a) go b) went c) goes d) going

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. Wael's - is - Which - favorite - bird - ?

   ....

2. as - honey - People - a medicine - used - .

   ....

3. make - used - People - linen - clothes - to - .

   ....

4. old - has - The - cheese - a bad - odor - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Mud

Guiding questions:

1. Who used it?
2. What did they use it for?
3. Where did they take it?
4. What did they make from it?
5. Was it important?

....

....

....

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

Guiding elements:

(trip - two lakes - 67 meters high - loud)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (4) We're on the move

Vocabulary

pedal	بدّال	skateboard	لوح تزلج
brakes	فرامل	physics	فيزياء
wheel	عجلة	builder	عامل بناء
speed	سرعة	inventor	مخترع
push force	قوة الدفع	feathers	ريش
pull force	قوة السحب	land	يهبط
friction	احتكاك	hurt	يؤذي
space	فضاء	invent	يخترع
tension	ضغط	fall over	يقع - يسقط
air resistance	مقاومة الهواء	tires	إطارات
gravity	جاذبية	rope	حبل
dart	سهم	hook	خطاف
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	fold	يثني
vertically	عموديًا	turn over	يقلب
crease	يضغط / يجعد	ground	الأرض
glider	طائرة شراعية	desert	صحراء
tip	طرف	float	يطفو
astronaut	رائد فضاء	interested in	مهتم بـ
normal	طبيعي	planet	كوكب
special	خاص / مميز	Mars	المريخ
tour	جولة	company	شركة
stadium	استاد	project	مشروع
engineer	مهندس	solve	يحل
pilot	طيار	apartment	شقة
trampoline	نطاطة	architecture	هندسة معمارية
parachute	باراشوت	architect	مهندس معماري

Question tag

السؤال المذيل

- It has two parts.

يتكون من جزئين.

(1)		(2)
a sentence	,	question tag?

Usage

- We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

- The question tag is formed of:

يتكون السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد فعل ناقص ضمير فاعل

Notes

1. positive sentence , negative tag?

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

2. negative sentence , positive tag?

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

3. We use a comma before the question tag.

e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amal is interested in the stars and ....
   a) plants b) planets c) leaves d) roots
2. It is .... to study other planets.
   a) useless b) important c) bad d) ugly
3. Understanding planets might help us solve some of Earth's ....
   a) grounds b) floors c) cycles d) problems
4. It looks .... living without gravity.
   a) sad b) bad c) fun d) boring

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Karim decided to be a ....
   a) pilot b) doctor c) teacher d) dentist
2. Karim went to an airplane festival with mum and ....
   a) uncle b) dad c) brother d) sister
3. They saw lots of different ....
   a) bikes b) cars c) planes d) buses
4. The planes were flying around in a ....
   a) square b) place c) club d) circle

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

float - sun - stars - fall - important

Anas : What does gravity do?
Seif : It makes things 1) .... to the ground.
Anas : What will happen if there is no gravity?
Seif : People will 2) .... in the air.
Anas : What does gravity do to the planets?
Seif : It keeps the planets moving around the 3) ....
Anas : So gravity is 4) .... to the earth.
Seif : You are right.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

clocks - telling - years - scientist - saying

People around the world invented water clocks. They were the best for 1) .... the time correctly. In 1656 a 2) .... invented the first modern clock. These new 3) .... became the best way to tell the time. But water clocks were very important for many 4) ....

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sherif started helping a .... design company online.
   a) toy b) robot c) doll d) electric
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) English b) French c) Japanese d) Arabic
3. Sherif is now learning ....
   a) Japanese b) English c) French d) Spanish

B) Answer the following questions

1. When did he do his school work?

....

2. What did he want to be when he was 10 years old?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Judy wants to fly planes. She'd like to be a / an ....
   a) astronaut b) engineer c) pilot d) architect
2. Adam likes studying the planets. He wants to be a/an ....
   a) astronaut b) teacher c) farmer d) doctor
3. Ali would like to help to build new bridges. He'd like to be a/ an ....
   a) nurse b) gardener c) engineer d) astronaut
4. You can use .... when you want a bike to stop or slow down.
   a) brakes b) pedals c) seats d) wheels
5. You use a .... force to jump on a trampoline.
   a) push b) pull c) air d) resistance
6. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an ....
   a) engineer b) architect c) inventor d) pilot
7. When you open the fridge door, you are using a .... force.
   a) push b) gravity c) pull d) resistance
8. He made two .... to help him fly like a bird.
   a) wings b) feathers c) beaks d) legs
9. End your email with ....
   a) See you soon b) Hi c) Hello d) Welcome
10. Begin your email with ....
    a) By for now b) See you soon c) Hi d) Welcome
11. She is interested .... using renewable resources.
    a) at b) on c) in d) of
12. A person who works in space is called a/an ....
    a) architect b) astronaut c) teacher d) doctor
13. .... between the bike tyres and the road stops you from falling.
    a) Friction b) Gravity c) Tension d) Spring force
14. To increase the speed of the bike, you must .... the pedals more quickly.
    a) push b) pull c) run d) jump

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. The children visited the science museum today, ... they?
   a) did   b) didn't   c) do   d) don't
2. People .... see some interesting things there, can't they?
   a) can   b) will   c) are   d) can't
3. Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, ... he?
   a) can't   b) didn't   c) will   d) do
4. The science museum .... far from the city center, is it?
   a) is   b) isn't   c) can   d) can't
5. Khaled's sister is 12 years old, ... she?
   a) won't   b) don't   c) can't   d) isn't
6. Mr Hassan doesn't drive cars. .... he?
   a) is   b) can   c) does   d) will
7. I'll be in your class next year, ... I?
   a) am   b) do   c) can't   d) won't
8. Rania .... play the guitar, can't she?
   a) can   b) can't   c) will   d) won't
9. We won't be late, ... we?
   a) do   b) are   c) can   d) will
10. Eman didn't go to the park, ... she?
    a) is   b) can   c) will   d) did
11. There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, ... there?
    a) did   b) does   c) is   d) can
12. She .... tell me her name, did she?
    a) isn't   b) didn't   c) doesn't   d) won't
13. You will send Grandpa an email, ... you?
    a) don't   b) won't   c) can't   d) mustn't
14. We can make dinner tonight, ... we?
    a) won't   b) don't   c) can't   d) didn't

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. some - to - talk - I - my friends - had - time - to - .

....

2. a great - was - Abbas Ibn Firnas - inventor - .

....

3. air - The - into - children - up - the - flew - .

....

4. gravity - there - space - Is - in - ?

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To your friend Safia about your future job. Your name is Anas.

Guiding elements:

(teacher - interesting - children - hard - school)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Gravity

Guiding elements:

(fall - force - float - air - planets - moving)

....

....

....

....

(1) محافظة القليوبية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rainforests are characterized by ...... climatic conditions throughout the year.
   a) cold b) snowy c) warm d) stormy
2. The average temperature .... there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit.
   a) recorded b) played c) needed d) weeded
3. Rainforests are .... the equator.
   a) far b) near c) south d) north
4. A huge .... of animals can live in the rainforests.
   a) variety b) possibility c) probability d) ability

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

waterfalls - sand - made - Nile - making

The valley of Wadi El-Rayan is an area of 1759 km². It is located about 65 km southwest of Fayum city and 80 km west of the 1) .... River. The Wadi has been used for man- 2) .... lakes from agricultural drainage which has made a reserve of the two separate Wadi El Rayan Lakes. Among the springs, there are three sulphur springs, with extensive mobile 3) .... dunes. Wadi El Rayan waterfalls are considered to be the largest 4) ...... in Egypt.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

A body system is a collection of parts able to work together to serve a common purpose - growth, reproduction and survival. Each part of a system depends on the other parts to perform tasks that can't be achieved by single parts acting alone. Our bodies are made up of countless cells all requiring oxygen to carry out the important process of respiration. In this process cells use oxygen gas and produce carbon dioxide gas - a waste product that must be removed from the body. The process of breathing allows these gases to be exchanged between the blood and lungs.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined words "able to" mean ....

   a) can   b) can't   c) must   d) mustn't

2. Our bodies are made up of .... cells.

   a) counted   b) countless   c) few   d) no

3. Cells use .... gas and produce carbon dioxide.

   a) oxygen   b) carbon dioxide   c) oil   d) petrol

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do parts of the body work together?

....

5. Where can oxygen and carbon dioxide gases be exchanged?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari drank a lot of salty water. ( )
2. Wadi El Gemal is Wadi of the Camels. ( )
3. Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees. ( )
4. The beach was too sandy. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari's mother showed him which .... to eat.
2. Ras Hankorab beach was a place for ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... look right and left before crossing the road.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) won't
2. I .... finished my homework yet.
   a) won't b) hasn't c) don't d) haven't
3. Karma didn't .... to the park yesterday.
   a) went b) goes c) go d) going
4. If I had enough money, I .... buy a new car.
   a) will b) would c) have d) has
5. Hazem is Adam's cousin .... lives in the Sinai Peninsula.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
6. .... Fares ever traveled by train?
   a) Does b) Has c) Have d) Will

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. dangerous - is - warming - for - Global - the Earth - .
   ....
2. the tallest - mountain - in - is - Africa - Mount Kilimanjaro - .
   ....
3. beauty - rainforest - There's - in the - so much - Amazon - .
   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural resources

Guiding words:

(renewable - sun - soil - nature - solar energy - non-renewable - fossil fuels - coal)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nabq is a very big national park in South ....
   a) Africa b) America c) Sinai d) pole
2. Along the coast, there is a mangrove ....
   a) forest b) animal c) fire d) food
3. Mangrove trees can grow in the .... water.
   a) sugar b) juicy c) milky d) salt
4. Mangrove trees have amazing ....
   a) boots b) roots c) stems d) leaves

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

more - regularly - cycle - important - sleep

Your heart beats over 100.000 times a day! So it is 1) .... to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or 2) .... , you make your heart work harder. If you exercise 3) .... , your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need 4) .... easily.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Amazon Rainforest is the world's largest tropical rainforest. It covers an area of nearly 2.8 million square miles, which is about the size of the continent of Australia. The Amazon Rainforest gets its life from the majestic Amazon River, the world's second largest river, which runs directly through the heart of the region. There is a clear link between the health of the Amazon and the health of the planet. The rainforests help the local and global climate. Deforestation releases significant amounts of carbon, which has **negative** results around the world.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the passage is the ....
   a) Nile Valley b) Amazon Rainforest c) Thames path d) Seine River
2. The word "negative" means not ....
   a) positive b) transitive c) initiative d) detective
3. Deforestation releases significant amount of ....
   a) oxygen b) nitrogen c) carbon d) oil

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the world's largest tropical rainforest?
....
5. How does the Amazon Rainforest get its life?
....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle. ( )
2. Jubari was very weak. ( )
3. Predators are dangerous animals. ( )
4. Acacia trees give gazelles candies. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his ....
2. Jubari and Subira live in the wadi of the ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We learned about the area .... we live.
   a) who b) that c) where d) which
2. Nadine goes to the pool .... she likes swimming.
   a) so b) but c) and d) because

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. He has lived here .... twenty years.
   a) for b) since c) ago d) in
4. She hasn't arrived ....
   a) just b) yet c) never d) ever
5. If I .... a lot of money, I'd build a home for animals.
   a) have b) had c) has d) having
6. The children visited the science museum, ... they?
   a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) aren't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a garden - who - a man - met - We - works in - .

....

2. a ship - travelled - ever - you - on - Have - ?

....

3. parents - Kamal's - are - chasers - storm - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A job you would like to do in the future

Guiding words:

(doctor - help - sick - examine - patients - give- medicine - work - hospital - travel - abroad - charity)

....

....

....

....

(3) إدارة إدكو

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Jana would love to be a/an ....
   a) vet b) teacher c) engineer d) doctor
2. You need to understand .... to be an engineer.
   a) music b) science c) maths d) art
3. An engineer's job sounds really ....
   a) interesting b) terrible c) boring d) bad
4. Engineers make things such as skateboards and ....
   a) roads b) windows c) tables d) chairs

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fish - hives - medicine - sweet - Honey

People keep bees to make honey in ancient Egypt. 1) .... was an expensive but an important natural resource. People used it to make food taste 2) ....
They used honey as a 3) .... too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses called 4) .... ,on top of each other.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Adel is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at six o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast with his family. Then, he goes to his workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Adel has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family. Mr Adel is very kind and helpful. All people like him and respect him.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adel has .... daughters.
   a) one b) two c) three d) no
2. A carpenter can make ....
   a) bread b) chairs c) pizza d) cows
3. Adel doesn't go to work on ....
   a) Saturday b) Friday c) Sunday d) Monday

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is Adel's job?

....

5. When does Adel get up?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was brave and curious.
2. The mangroves were too sweet.
3. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
4. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira was Jubari's ....
2. The sea water was very ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have a friend .... is very good at tennis.
   a) which b) when c) who d) where
2. Fish, chicken .... beans are all healthy food.
   a) because b) so c) and d) but

3. Have you .... fish soup?
   a) eat b) eaten c) eats d) eating
4. If we go to the museum, we will .... dinosaur bones.
   a) sees b) see c) saw d) seen
5. I .... to Greece last year.
   a) travel b) will travel c) travels d) traveled
6. This bird can fly, ... it?
   a) can b) can't c) will d) won't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. hens - She - the - fed - already - has - .

....

2. , Hany - Where - you - yesterday - go - did - ?

....

3. the rain - for - We - wait - must - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding words:

(Last week - went - museum - friends - bus - took photos- nice time - came back - happy)

....

....

....

....

(4) محافظة القليوبية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nabq is a very big national .... in South Sinai.

a) mark b) park c) dark d) garden

2. Heba learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in ....

a) dirty water b) fresh water c) salt water d) polluted water

3. The mangrove trees .... the living things and the non-living things in the marine ecosystem.

a) protect b) destroy c) eat d) damage

4. Last week, Heba went on a school .... to Nabq.

a) book b) bus c) gate d) trip

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

read - exercise - healthy - design - wonders

My teacher gave us some advice. He told us to eat 1) .... food and do 2) .... He said we must protect the environment and man-made 3).................... . He also told us to 4) .... books to gain knowledge.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

People have kept bees to make honey for a long time. In ancient Egypt, people kept <u>them</u> to make honey which was an expensive, but important natural resource. Most people liked honey because it could be used for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put some honey on the cut. Really, honey is one of the most important things that must be found in our houses because it has a lot of uses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "them" refers to ....
   a) honey b) bees c) ancient Egyptians d) medicine
2. People used honey to make food taste ....
   a) salty b) sweat c) sour d) sweet
3. In fact, honey is very .... in our houses.
   a) happy b) ugly c) necessary d) funny

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did people like honey?

....

5. How can you use honey as a medicine?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari wasn't very brave. ( )
2. The mangrove forest was too salty for Jubari. ( )
3. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal in the Eastern Desert. ( )
4. Subira taught Jubari to stay away from predators. ( )

B Complete the following sentences.

1. Subira is Jubari's ....
2. Jubari can't run in Ras Hankorab beach because the sand is very ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is the house .... I live.
   a) when b) where c) which d) who
2. I am ill, ... I am going to see a doctor.
   a) because b) but c) so d) as

3. Have you .... seen a snake?
   a) ever   b) never   c) for   d) since
4. Would you like .... some water?
   a) have   b) to have   c) having   d) had
5. .... he is strong, he can't carry the box.
   a) Since   b) Although   c) Despite   d) As
6. Ahmed is as .... as Nabil.
   a) taller   b) tallest   c) the tallest   d) tall

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. his - friend - He - visiting - is - old - .

....

2. It's - to - important - a healthy - have - diet - .

....

3. study - you - succeed - If - hard, - will - you - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cotton

Guiding words:

(grow - Nile Delta - clothes - good for - renewable)

....

....

....

....

....

....

(5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yosof wants to be a / an ....

   a) doctor   b) astronaut   c) pilot   d) engineer

2. People without .... float all the time.

   a) stars   b) sun   c) water   d) gravity

3. Yosof is interested in the .... and the planets.

   a) stars   b) sports   c) clothes   d) foods

4. .... help us solve some of the Earth's problems.

   a) Rainbow   b) Walls   c) Clothes   d) Plants

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

liquid - solid - change - into - change

We can see the matter in three states. Solids, liquids and gases can 1) .... from one state to another. When you boil water, it turns 2) .... steam. If you freeze water, it becomes 3) .... When ice gets warm, it melts and becomes 4) ....

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Parks are very important for us. People go to the parks to walk, relax and breathe fresh air. It's healthy and important for our hearts to do exercise and relax. In the parks, we find trees, flowers and grass where people can enjoy nice time. Children can find a safe place to play, run and laugh in front of the eyes of their parents. People can usually go to the parks on Fridays. They take food and drink with them. We should keep the parks clean. We should put litter in bins to keep them clean.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... put litter in bins to keep the park clean.
   a) should   b) are   c) shouldn't   d) mustn't
2. It is .... for children to go the parks.
   a) dangerous   b) unsafe   c) safe   d) save
3. The underlined word "clean" is the opposite of ....
   a) clear   b) calm   c) happy   d) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do people go to the parks?

....

5. What can we find in the parks?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Seagrass grows under the sea. ( )
2. Lake Nasser is a natural lake. ( )
3. Jubari met the turtle first. ( )
4. The turtle laid its eggs in the sand. ( )

B Complete the following sentences.

1. The sea water was very .... for Jubari.
2. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on .... days.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed played football .... scored two goals.
   a) and   b) so   c) but   d) because
2. This is the school .... I and my brothers learn.
   a) who   b) which   c) where   d) why

Our heart .... over 100.000 times a day.

a) have beaten b) beats c) beat d) is beaten

If there .... volcano, we will see smoke and lava.

a) is b) was c) has d) had

. She got the full mark .... she studied hard.

a) and b) so c) because d) but

. Omar said he .... do homework.

a) can b) could c) will d) may

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - wood - made - A chair - of - .

....

2. Emad - visited - uncle - has - his - .

....

3. is - important - Why - the sun - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite job

Guiding words:

(work hard - study - wear - help - build)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(6) إدارة الغردقة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef is on a vacation with his ....
   a) friends b) family c) brothers d) cousins
2. Dahab is near the ....
   a) Red Sea b) Sinai c) Luxor d) Cairo
3. The water in Dahab is so ....
   a) cold b) warm c) hot d) cool
4. Youssef enjoys .... in the sea.
   a) diving b) sailing c) swimming d) fishing

2 Read and complete the dialoge with words from the box.

bad - saw - interesting - go - Luxor

Sama : Where did you 1) .... last week?
Rana : I went to 2) ....
Sama : What did you see there?
Rana : I 3) .... the Valley of the Kings.
Sama : Was it 4) .... ?
Rana : Yes, it was very interesting.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

My name's Amir. I'm eleven years old. I like English, but art is my favorite subject. I like painting in my free time. I live in Hurghade. My friends are Adel and Ali. Adel is eleven too, but Ali is twelve. Adel is very good at sports. He loves karate. He plays in a football team, too. Ali is good at languages. He speaks English very well. He often talks to his cousin in England.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali often talks to his ………………………………………………… in England.
   a) friend b) cousin c) brother d) grandfather
2. Amir's favorite subject is …………………………………………………
   a) art b) music c) Arabic d) math
3. Adel is ………………………………………………………………… years old.
   a) ten b) eleven c) nine d) twelve

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Amir like doing in his free time?

…………………………………………………………………………………………

5. Who are Amir's friends?

…………………………………………………………………………………………

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari found the Wadi for gazelles. ( )
2. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. ( )
3. Wadi El Gemal isn't a perfect place for gazelles. ( )
4. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous. ( )

B Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari learned to run away very ……………………………………………
2. Jubari couldn't drink the sea water because it was ……………………

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you ever ………………………………………………………… a cake?
   a) made b) make c) making d) makes
2. We met a man ……………………………………………… works in a garden.
   a) where b) which c) who d) when

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. The colorful birds on the tree are very ....

   a) beauty b) patient c) luck d) beautiful

4. We didn't .... the zoo yesterday.

   a) visits b) visit c) visited d) visiting

5. Without rain, the grass .... grow.

   a) can b) will c) might d) can't

6. I don't play basketball, ... I play volleyball.

   a) so b) but c) because d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. didn't - I - meet - my - yesterday - friend - .

   ....

2. water - Mangrove - in - grow - trees - salt - .

   ....

3. you - ever - Have - to - travelled - Cairo - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding words:

(fruit - vegetables - exercise - water)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test (7)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mangrove trees help the .... in different ways.
   a) beach b) environment c) village d) country
2. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the .... ecosystem.
   a) marine b) river c) mountain d) desert
3. The deep .... stop the sand from moving away.
   a) leaves b) roots c) plants d) seeds
4. This ecosystem is a safe .... for many animals.
   a) house b) village c) home d) cave

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

gravity - astronaut - float - problems - planets

I am Amal. I want to be an 1) .... because I am interested in the stars and the 2) .... It's important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of the earth's 3) .... When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun to live without gravity. The people 4) .... all the time.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mohamed Salah is my favorite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 meters tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and

hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to help poor people. He is very friendly and always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he often enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. One of Salah's hobbies is ....
   a) giving money to poor
   b) building schools
   c) getting much time
   d) playing video games
2. He gives money to build ....
   a) hotels
   b) theaters
   c) schools
   d) post offices
3. The underlined word "**fast**" is the opposite of ....
   a) quick
   b) quiet
   c) slow
   d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

....

5. Who does Salah talk to?

....



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a brave and curious son.
2. Jubari found Wadi of the Gazelles.
3. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
4. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari which .... were dangerous.
2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can't take photos in here, ... we?
   a) can't b) will c) can d) do
2. It was not very cold yesterday, ... it?
   a) was b) was not c) is not d) do not
3. Mary .... make lunch for family. She is still young.
   a) will b) can c) must not d) can't
4. This is Ali .... has a cough.
   a) who b) where c) which d) when
5. Omar said that he .... the story.
   a) like b) likes c) will like d) liked
6. If I met a famous person, I .... know what to say.
   a) won't b) wouldn't c) can't d) don't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. with - of - The parts - the forest - the ecosystem - interact - .

....

2. your - beat - How - does - heart - often - ?

....

3. to - eat - catch - Can - we - a rabbit - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: **Rain**

(Rain - important - living things - plants - grow - drink - animals - humans)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In some ways, humans are similar to ....
   a) plants   b) water   c) sun   d) sky
2. Our .... move blood away from our heart.
   a) veins   b) arteries   c) bones   d) muscles
3. Our .... carry blood to the heart.
   a) bones   b) stomach   c) veins   d) arteries
4. We don't use .... like plants do.
   a) oxygen   b) carbon dioxide   c) water   d) food

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

ate - found - dinosaur - mountains - home

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?

Donia : We are going into the 1) .... with Dad. There were dinosaur bones in the mountains.

Tarek : What would we do if we 2) .... dinosaur bones?

Donia : I would take them 3) .... Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.

Tarek : Look! I've found a bone. Is it a 4) .... bone?

Donia : I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. It's just an animal bone.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

There were many natural resources in ancient Egypt. Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples

which show people keeping bees. People used papyrus. It is a strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing people made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egyptians used .... for helping with problems with the skin.
   a) linen b) papyrus c) honey d) flax
2. The underlined word **"ancient"** means very ....
   a) new b) old c) fast d) big
3. The hieroglyphics in ancient temples show people keeping ....
   a) hens b) bees c) birds d) cows

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who used honey to treat health problems?

....

5. What was papyrus used for?

....



A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
2. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.
3. The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.
4. Lake Nasser is a natural lake.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari was .... and curious.
2. The mountains were too ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We met a man .... works as a doctor.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
2. Where have you .... ?
   a) be b) been c) are d) being
3. If I .... the king, I wouldn't know what to say.
   a) meet b) will meet c) met d) would meet
4. Salma can't swim, ... she?
   a) can b) will c) does d) can't
5. Malak has a book .... is about medicinal plants.
   a) who b) where c) when d) which
6. They .... to Jordan two years ago.
   a) go b) went c) have gone d) will go

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Crater - The Ngorongoro - is - square - kilometers - 260 - .
   ....
2. lives - What - in - forests - mangrove - ?
   ....
3. the USA - to - Has - traveled - Mr Kamal - ?
   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

An ecosystem

Guiding words:

(animals - plants - area - big - interact - species)

....

....

....

Test (9)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of .... volcanoes.
   a) two   b) thirty   c) three   d) four
2. Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in ....
   a) Africa   b) Europe   c) America   d) Australia
3. It's .... to climb Kilimanjaro.
   a) easy   b) nice   c) difficult   d) good
4. There is snow and .... at the top.
   a) water   b) gas   c) ice   d) fall

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Where - Which - haven't - been - Have

Sondos : Have you travelled abroad, Dad?
Father : Yes, I have 1) .... to many European countries.
Sondos : 2) .... you been to Italy?
Father : Yes, I have been to Italy.
Sondos : Have you visited England?
Father : No, I 3) ....
Sondos : 4) .... country did you like most?
Father : I liked France most.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last year I visited the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg in Russia. It was such a fantastic trip. In this Palace there are marble and gold everywhere with huge chandeliers hanging from the ceiling. The light

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

made everything shiny. The Winter Place is full of treasures from the past. I really enjoyed the amazing views over the river Neva. I had to walk a lot so I wore comfortable shoes. Going to the Palace in the morning is much better than going in the afternoon, because there were long queues in the afternoon. I hope I can go there one more time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I visited the Winter Palace ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) last year d) last month
2. The Winter Palace is on the river ....
   a) Nile b) Thames c) Neva d) Seine
3. The underlined word "**It**" refers to the ....
   a) Winter Palace b) trip c) Summer Palace d) castle

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where is the Winter Palace?

....

5. Why did the visitor wear comfortable shoes?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari looked for Donga. ( )
2. The beach was too sandy. ( )
3. Wadi el Gemal isn't a perfect place for gazelles. ( )
4. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. The sea water was very .... for Jubari.
2. The dugong lives in the .... forest.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you .... seen a lion?
   a) ever   b) never   c) yet   d) just
2. Huda likes tennis .... she doesn't like basketball.
   a) and   b) so   c) because   d) but
3. If I .... a lot of money, I'll buy a new car.
   a) have   b) has   c) had   d) will have
4. This is a place .... it sometimes snows.
   a) where   b) who   c) when   d) which
5. Their teacher .... give them a lot of homework, will she?
   a) will   b) won't   c) can't   d) doesn't
6. My parents .... the fire service if we see a fire.
   a) call   b) will call   c) calls   d) called

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - What - we - do - with - natural - resources - ?
....
2. don't - They - look - normal - shoes - like - .
....
3. cupboard - coffee - isn't - There - any - in - the - .
....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural Wonders

Guiding words:

The Sahara Desert - largest - eleven - countries - Mount Kilimanjaro - three - volcanoes - tallest)

....
....

Test (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The kingfisher visited her ...., the lizard, in a mangrove tree.
   a) friend b) mother c) father d) teacher
2. The lizard was ....
   a) excited b) happy c) delighted d) sad
3. When the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down ....
   a) grass b) flowers c) trees d) leaves
4. After cutting trees, it was difficult for the lizard to find .... to eat.
   a) food b) figs c) fish d) birds

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sweet - snakes - because - Honey - bees

People kept 1) .... to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4.500 years ago. 2) .... was an expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it 3) .... you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste 4) .... They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity. The people float all the time. I have read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amal wants to be a/an ....
   a) doctor b) pilot c) engineer d) astronaut
2. Living without .... will make people float all the time.
   a) gravity b) flood c) food d) water
3. The underlined word "float" is the opposite of ....
   a) sing b) sink c) think d) run

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is it important to study planets?

....

5. Why do people float into space?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The sea water was fresh. ( )
2. The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs. ( )
3. The mangroves were too salty. ( )
4. Jubari was brave and curious. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on ....
2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She has .... been to France.
   a) never b) yet c) since d) for
2. Their teacher won't give them homework, ... he?
   a) will b) won't c) can d) is

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. She has fish .... rice for lunch.
   a) but b) so c) because d) and
4. They .... to Jordan two years ago.
   a) go b) went c) have gone d) goes
5. If my family .... to the park later, I'd tell you.
   a) go b) went c) will go d) goes
6. These are the girls .... are very good at maths.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. would - was - there - What - gravity - no - happen - if - ?

....

2. park - the - I - like - visiting - .

....

3. the environment - will - How - you - help - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

What do you want to be?

Guiding words:

(astronaut - study - stars - planets - space station - gravity)

....

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Egyptian people kept .... to make honey.
   a) goats b) buffaloes c) dogs d) bees
2. In ancient Egypt, honey was ....
   a) cheap b) expensive c) hot d) cold
3. Honey is an important .... resource.
   a) man-made b) natural c) artificial d) useless
4. People used honey to make food taste ....
   a) sweet b) salty c) sour d) awful

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

family - train - been - Why - When

Dalia : Where have you been?
Rania : I have 1) .... to Luxor.
Dalia : 2) .... did you go there?
Rania : To see the temples and enjoy the warm weather.
Dalia : How did you go there?
Rania : By 3) ....
Dalia : Who did you go with?
Rania : I went there with my 4) ....

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many people prefer to live in towns and big cities like Cairo and Alexandria. They are attracted by their lights, tall buildings and clubs. Many people leave their villages and live in towns where the chances of work are found. They work in big shops and restaurants and earn much money. Those people have forgotten that they're in need of the village

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

and its crops, vegetables and fruits. Without the farmer, people would suffer much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Clubs and tall buildings are found in the ....
   a) village b) city c) park d) farm
2. People can go to the .... to have a meal.
   a) cinema b) theatre c) restaurant d) bakery
3. People in cities can earn .... money.
   a) many b) few c) much d) little

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do many people prefer to live in big cities?
....
5. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?
....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach. ( )
2. Jubari found Wadi of gazelles. ( )
3. There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert. ( )
4. Jubari was Subira's son. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. The people made Lake Nasser because they needed ....
2. Gebel Elba is very ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always eat healthy diet. .... I exercise every day.
   a) and b) but c) so d) because
2. My father has .... by bus.
   a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling
3. If she .... hard, she'll pass the exam.
   a) study b) studies c) studied d) will study
4. She .... English, didn't she?
   a) likes b) liked c) will like d) is liked
5. Mr Hassan .... drive cars, does he?
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) hasn't
6. Yesterday they .... to go on a trip.
   a) decide b) decides c) decided d) will decide

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. traveled - on - Have - a - ship - you - ?

....

2. is - largest - Cairo - in - the - Egypt - city - .

....

3. weather - study - Storm - chasers - extreme - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: **Resources in ancient Egypt**

(successful - flax - linen - papyrus - books)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك على التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Test (12)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mangrove trees can grow in .... water.
   a) fresh   b) salt   c) sweet   d) sour
2. Mangrove forests .... the marine ecosystem.
   a) protect   b) damage   c) destroy   d) kill
3. The leaves of mangrove trees take more .... from the air than other trees.
   a) oxygen   b) carbon dioxide   c) water   d) gas
4. Bees make special honey from the .... of mangrove trees.
   a) roots   b) leaves   c) stems   d) flowers

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

friend - went - What - How - go

Tom	:	Where did you go at the weekend?
Ann	:	I 1) .... to the club.
Tom	:	2) .... did you go there?
Ann	:	By car.
Tom	:	Who did you go with?
Ann	:	I went with my 3) ....
Tom	:	4) .... did you play?
Ann	:	I played tennis.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

During the summer holiday, Karim, his brother and sister went to Alexandria. One day they thought it was a nice idea to hire a boat as the weather was **lovely**. They hired a boat for ten pounds. They rowed till they were far from the shore. Suddenly the waves became very high, and the boat turned upside down. The children shouted for help. A man heard their

shouts and quickly took off his clothes, jumped into the water and swam to them. He was able to save them and bring them safely to the shore.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They hired a boat because the weather was ....

   a) bad b) ugly c) lovely d) terrible

2. The underlined word "lovely" means .... weather.

   a) bad b) cold c) hot d) fine

3. Summer is a ....

   a) sport b) season c) year d) month

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did Karim go during the summer holiday?

....

5. What was their idea?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water. ( )
2. Jubari learnt a lot from his father. ( )
3. Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles. ( )
4. Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira showed Jubari which .... to eat.
2. They got enough water from the .... tree.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I passed the exam .... I studied hard.
   a) so b) because c) and d) but
2. If I .... a lot of money, I would buy a car.
   a) has b) have c) had d) haven't
3. There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits .... be hungry.
   a) can b) can't c) will d) won't
4. She hasn't done her homework ....
   a) since b) just c) for d) yet
5. Khaled's sister is 12 years old, ... ?
   a) isn't he b) isn't she c) hasn't he d) hasn't she
6. It .... hot yesterday.
   a) will be b) isn't c) won't be d) wasn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. met - We - who - a man - a garden - works - in - .

....

2. do - you - What - is - natural - think - a - resource - ?

....

3. trees - cut - came - People - and - down - some - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: **The mangrove trees**

(important - marine ecosystem - leaves - thick - animals - live)

....

....

....

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The lava and .... mix with mud flows.
   a) flash b) ash c) splash d) crash
2. This makes soil .... where good food grows.
   a) bad b) fertile c) sad d) ugly
3. The .... thank the volcanoes for helping them.
   a) doctors b) farmers c) teachers d) bakers
4. Farmers are very .... at the end.
   a) worried b) afraid c) sad d) happy

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Did - What - stories - Do - fine

Tarek : How are you, Ahmed?
Ahmed : I'm 1) ....
Tarek : 2) .... , thanks. .... are you doing now?
Ahmed : I'm doing my English homework.
Tarek : 3) .... you like English?
Ahmed : Yes, I like English very much.
Tarek : Do you read 4) .... in English?
Ahmed : Yes, they are my favorite.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to **start** his own company.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world.

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Sherif wanted to be an .... when he was 10.
   a) doctor b) engineer c) teacher d) vet
2. The underlined word **"start"** is the opposite of ....
   a) begin b) finish c) play d) study
3. Sherif found .... useful.
   a) math b) English c) history d) geography

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. When did he start helping a robot design company online?

....

5. What subjects helped him to solve problems?

....

4 The Reader

...ad and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water. ( )
2. Subira taught Jubari to stay near animals with big teeth. ( )
3. The crocodile lives in Lake Nasser. ( )
4. The desert is a perfect place for gazelles. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari climbed the biggest ....
2. Gebel Elba is the .... home.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Has he .... on a plane or a train?
   a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling.
2. They are happy, ... they?
   a) can't b) don't c) are d) aren't
3. If he was free, he .... visit us.
   a) will b) can c) may d) would
4. This is Dina .... lives in Cairo.
   a) which b) who c) when d) where
5. They visited a wadi .... they saw some animals.
   a) who b) where c) which d) when
6. I .... you this bike already.
   a) bought b) have bought c) would buy d) buy

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a bike - you - Have - ridden - before - ?

   ....

2. to - used - People - mud - houses - build - .

   ....

3. here - be - is - Life - going to - better - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: **Sunlight**

(need - food - vitamin D - protect - sick - feel happy)

....

....

....

Test (14)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's .... and Salma and her family are going for a holiday.
   a) winter b) spring c) summer d) autumn
2. Salma and her family are going to ....
   a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Marsa Alam d) Alexandria
3. Salma looks out of the .... window.
   a) bus b) car c) train d) plane
4. Salma sees a sign to Sukari ....
   a) fine b) mine c) line d) coin

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Archaeologists - Doctors - natural - volcano - world

The Great Pyramid is man-made, which means that people made it. 1) .... can learn a lot about history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot from 2) .... wonders of the 3) .... such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was once a 4) .... which erupted millions of years ago.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Jack is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at 6 o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast . Then, he goes to his big workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Jack has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family.

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "has" means to ....
   a) buy   b) sell   c) make   d) eat
2. Jack doesn't have a .... workshop.
   a) small   b) big   c) large   d) huge
3. A carpenter can make ....
   a) bread   b) bikes   c) tables   d) vegetables

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. What is Jack's job?

....

5. When does Jack get up?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a dorcas camel. ( )
2. Jubari was very strong. ( )
3. Jubari wanted to play with all birds. ( )
4. Subira is Jubari's mother. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari was brave and ....
2. Jubari was born in ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... you this story already.
   a) tell   b) tells   c) have told   d) telling

2. She will visit us tomorrow, ... she?

a) will   b) can't   c) won't   d) can

3. He said he .... trees.

a) plant   b) planted   c) plants   d) planting

4. He eats much .... he is fat.

a) so   b) because   c) but   d) or

5. I'd have an ice cream if it .... hot.

a) is   b) was   c) will be   d) be

6. .... you ever visited another country?

a) Has   b) Have   c) Are   d) Do

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - pour - You - into - a liquid - a cup - .

....

2. doing - are - What - tomorrow - you - ?

....

3. the air - flew - up - The children - into - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding words:

(last - friends - arrived - Pyramids - Sphinx - museum - Tower - nice time)

....

....

....

....

Test (15)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Taha works at the ....
   a) park b) museum c) school d) temple
2. Our class is learning about natural ....
   a) courses b) resources c) houses d) forces
3. They are talking about resources in .... Egypt.
   a) old b) new c) modern d) ancient
4. Ancient Egypt had .... of natural resources.
   a) little b) few c) a lot d) less

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fresh - drinking - important - rain - salty

Water is very 1) .... for our life. We need it every day for 2) .... and washing. When there is no 3) ...., there is a drought. It's difficult to find 4) .... water in a drought (جفاف).

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

One summer evening, I was sitting by the open window reading a new story. After a time, it became too dark to read easily. So I put the book down and went up to switch on the light. I was just about to draw the curtains as well, when I heard a loud cry of help! It seemed to come from the trees at the end of the garden. I looked out, but I saw nothing. I used my torch to see my way back home. When I reached the window near the door of the house, I saw a bird sitting on the top of the window. It was a large green and red bird. It was a parrot. It was repeating "Help", but in a weak voice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I was reading a new ....

a) book b) article c) report d) story

2. It was a .... which cried for help.

a) parrot b) boy c) man d) girl

3. The underlined word "It" refers to the ....

a) tree b) garden c) bird d) window

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the writer go to the garden?

....

5. Where did the writer think the loud cry come from?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari found Wadi of the Gazelles. ( )
2. Predators aren't dangerous animals. ( )
3. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother. ( )
4. The crocodile lives in Lake Nasser. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. The beach was too ....
2. The mountains were too ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They like English, ... they?

a) does b) do c) don't d) didn't

2. If he ran, he .... catch the bus.

a) will b) would c) may d) can

3. He has .... a camel.
   a) ride   b) rode   c) ridden   d) rides
4. They said that they .... the lion.
   a) see   b) saw   c) sees   d) will see
5. They met a man .... works in a garden.
   a) which   b) who   c) where   d) when
6. He eats a lot of fruit .... it's healthy.
   a) but   b) so   c) because   d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. flax - used - People - make - to - linen - .

....

2. like - be - would - I - to - a teacher - .

....

3. center - far from - museum - The science - isn't - the city - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A picnic

Guiding words:

(picnic - family - fun - played - football - happy - enjoyed)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (16)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Copper was a very important ....
   a) medal b) metal c) pedal d) food
2. Copper was .... to bend.
   a) difficult b) hard c) easy d) funny
3. People used it to make ....
   a) tools b) pools c) rulers d) rolls
4. We can see a lot of the objects today in the Egyptian ....
   a) parks b) zoos c) museums d) banks

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

unhealthy - healthy - twice - tennis - What

Omar : What's your favorite sport?
Ahmed : My favorite sport is 1) ....
Omar : How often do you practise tennis?
Ahmed : I practise it 2) .... a week.
Omar : Do you have 3) .... diet?
Ahmed : Yes, I do.
Omar : 4) .... do you always eat?
Ahmed : I eat a lot of dairy products.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

English is an interesting language. It's spoken all over the world. More people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult, but unless you use it quite often, you'll forget it. A foreign language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and

live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world if you ever think of going to foreign countries. You'll find English more useful. Good English gives you a better chance for work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. English is ....
   a) useless b) useful c) careful d) careless
2. Good English gives you a better chance for good ....
   a) school b) job c) sport d) house
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) English b) world c) chance d) Arabic

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does a foreign language give you?

....

5. Where is English spoken?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles. ( )
2. The beach was too stony. ( )
3. Jubari thought he might see the Wadi of Gazelles from the top. ( )
4. Gebel Elba is the home of the Nubian ibex. ( )

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Donga is the name of a ....
2. Jubari's .... were going into the ground.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is the place .... I live.
   a) what b) where c) who d) which
2. If you need to increase the speed, you .... the pedals more quickly.
   a) will push b) pushing c) pushes d) pushed
3. They .... their house two years ago.
   a) sell b) sells c) will sell d) sold
4. He said he .... a car.
   a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying
5. We can't make dinner tonight, ... we?
   a) can't b) can c) will d) won't
6. I want to be healthy .... I don't eat candies.
   a) but b) so c) because d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the - visited - Have - desert - you - ?

....

2. sunlight - from - get - We - vitamin D - .

....

3. food - eat - important - It's - to - healthy - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Healthy Diet

Guiding words:

(fat - sugar - vitamins - vegetables - energy - carbohydrates - healthy - good for)

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart, veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat much chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book.

Unit (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The African continent has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. The Ngorongoro crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometres.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is 88 meters tall. It is in a very hot desert.

Unit (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People put bees in a house called hives.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they are dried.

Unit (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets.

It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity.

- Listen and choose the correct ans

I'm Karim. I decided to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom

and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

Tests

محافظة القليوبية (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainforests are characterized by warm climatic conditions throughout the year. The average temperature recorded there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit.
Rainforests are near the equator. A huge variety of animals can live in the rainforests.

إدارة كوم حمادة (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South Sinai. Along the coast, there is a mangrove forest. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine life. Mangrove trees can grow in the salt water. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water.

إدارة أدكو (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help make things such as skateboards and roads. Uncle Wael says that you need to understand maths to do this job. I work hard to be successful in life.

محافظة القليوبية (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South Sinai. Last week Heba went on a trip there. She learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in salt water. They protect the living things and the non-living things in the marine ecosystem.

إدارة بندر كفر الدوار (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Yosof is my friend. He wants to be a pilot. He says that people without gravity float all the time. He is interested in the stars and the planets. Plants help us solve some of the earth's problems.

إدارة الغردقة (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Youssef is on a vacation in Dahab with his family. It's near the Red Sea. It has a nice beach. The water in Dahab is so cool. He enjoys swimming in the sea.

Test (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mangrove trees help the environment in different ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand from moving away. This ecosystem is also a safe home for many animals.

Test (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries

move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. We don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Test (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa. Every year, about 25.000 people climb it but it is difficult. The mountain has different ecosystems. At the top there is snow and ice.

Test (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat.

Test (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptian kept bees to make honey over 4.500 years ago. Honey was expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked honey because you could use it for many different things. People used honey to make food taste sweet.

Test (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mangrove trees are special because they can grow in salt water. Mangrove forests protect the marine ecosystem. The leaves of mangrove trees take more carbon dioxide from the air than other trees. Bees make special honey from the flowers of mangrove trees.

Test (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows, this makes soil fertile where good food grows. When the farmers come back to the land,they thank the volcanoes for the helping hand. Farmers are very happy at the end.

Test (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari mine. She's very excited.

Test (15)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egypt had a lot of them.

Test (16)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Copper was a very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in the Egyptian museums.

Model Answers

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) blood
2) Arteries
3) Veins
4) carbon dioxide

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) sports
2) healthy
3) chocolate
4) relax

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) area 2) desert 3) living 4) fish

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) food 2) sunlight 3) protect 4) happy

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) marine 2) salty 3) thin

B)Answer the following questions.

4) Nabq National Park.

5) The roots are amazing the leaves are thick.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) leaves 2) living 3) non-living
4) butterflies 5) protect 6) interact
7) patient 8) beauty 9) success
10) Luck 11) Arteries 12) sunlight
13) healthy 14) nutrients

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) which 2) which 3) where 4) who
5) who 6) where 7) where 8) who
9) but 10) because 11) when 12) and
13) so 14) and

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) How often does your heart beat?
2) The dugong says that the people are back.
3) Do you know my aunt who lives in Alex?
4) What lives in the mangrove forests?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

To keep healthy you should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. You should also exercise. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food like chocolate. You should relax.

-) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Our heart)

Your heart beats over 100.000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) African 2) Tanzania 3) crater 4) 260

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Bridge 2) 200
3) tall 4) hot

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) reading 2) Tanzania
3) big 4) buffaloes

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) River 2) canyon
3) eroded 4) noise

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) Australia 2) month 3) limestone

B)Answer the following questions.

4) They're 25,000 to 30,000 years old.

5) Between three and five meters high.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) volcanic 2) wetlands 3) eleven 4) hot
5) shape 6) canyon 7) erode
8) wetland 9) erupt 10) Soil 11) Lava
12) mud flow 13) ribbon 14) basket

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) traveled 2) met 3) haven't played
4) Has 5) seen 6) ever 7) visited
8) eaten 9) been 10) saw 11) won
12) I have 13) taken 14) never been

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The African continent is an amazing place.
2) Have you traveled on a ship?
3) I have already told you this story.
4) What is special about the Island of Java?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The Sahara Desert)

The Sahara Desert is one of the natural wonders of Africa. It is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be about 180 meters high.

-) **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

(Man-made wonders of Africa)

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) bees 2) sweet 3) medicine 4) hives

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) mud 2) Nile
3) square 4) hard

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) flax 2) clothes
3) important 4) cotton

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) countries 2) fresh 3) medicine 4) Delta

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Rayan 2) bottom 3) sixty-seven

B) Answer the following questions.

4) An oasis in the desert.
5) Two lakes.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) renewable 2) boil 3) freeze
4) shovel 5) flax 6) Copper 7) honey
8) papyrus 9) mud 10) blind 11) odor
12) sticky 13) solid 14) do

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) would 2) met 3) will 4) visited
5) flew 6) was 7) will 8) sink
9) liked 10) had 11) could 12) would
13) was 14) went

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Which is Wael's favorite bird?
2) People used honey as a medicine.
3) People used linen to make clothes.
4) The old cheese has a bad odor.

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Mud)

People in ancient Egypt used mud. They used it for building houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These bricks were hard and strong when they dried. It was very important.

-) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom . The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) planets 2) important
3) problems 4) fun

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) pilot 2) dad
3) planes 4) circle

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) fall 2) float
3) sun 4) important

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) telling 2) scientist 3) clocks 4) years

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) robot 2) English 3) Japanese

B) Answer the following questions.

4) In the day.
5) He wanted to be an engineer.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) pilot 2) astronaut 3) engineer
4) brakes 5) push 6) inventor
7) pull 8) wings 9) See you soon
10) Hi 11) in 12) astronaut
13) Friction 14) push

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) didn't 2) can 3) will 4) isn't
5) isn't 6) does 7) won't 8) can
9) will 10) did 11) is 12) didn't
13) won't 14) can't

Model Answers

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) I had some time to talk to my friends.
2) Abbas Ibn Firnas was a great inventor.
3) The children flew up into the air.
4) Is there gravity in space?

6) Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To: Safia
From: Anas
Subject: Future job

Dear Safia,

I'm very happy to write this email to you. I'd like to tell you about my future job. I want to be a teacher. It is an interesting job. When I will be a teacher, I will work with children. I will work hard at school to help my pupils understand easily.

-) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Gravity)

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

Exams

(1) محافظة القليوبية

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) warm
2) recorded
3) near
4) variety

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Nile
2) made
3) sand
4) waterfalls

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) can 2) countless 3) oxygen

B)Answer the following questions.

4) To serve a common purpose - growth, reproduction and survival.
5) Between the blood and lungs.

4) The Reader.

A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) F 3) T 4) T

B)Complete the following sentences.

1) plants 2) turtles

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) must 2) haven't 3) go 4) would
5) who 6) Has

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Global warming is dangerous for the Earth.
2) Mount Kilimanjaro in Africa is the tallest mountain.
3) There is so much beauty in the Amazon raintorest.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural resources)

There are two kind of resources. They are renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind. They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy. Non-renewable energy isn't clean. When we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

(2) إدارة كوم حمادة

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Sinai
2) forest
3) salt
4) roots

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) important 2) cycle 3) regularly 4) more

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct answer.

1) Amazon Rainforest 2) positive 3) carbon

B)Answer the following questions.

4) The Amazon.
5) From the majestic Amazon River.

4) The Reader.

A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B)Complete the following sentences.

1) mother 2) Gemal

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) where 2) because 3) for
4) yet 5) had 6) didn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) We met a man who works in a garden.
2) Have you ever travelled on a ship?
3) Kamal's parents are storm-chasers.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A job you would like to do in the future)

I'd like to be a doctor when I grow up. When I'm a doctor, I can help and examine patients. I can give them medicine to feel better. I'll work in a hospital. I'll travel abroad to complete my study. I'll help the charity which takes care of the sick.

(3) إدارة إدكو

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) engineer 2) maths
3) interesting 4) roads

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Honey 2) sweet 3) medicine 4) hives

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) two 2) chairs 3) Friday

B) Answer the following questions.

4) A carpenter. 5) At 6 o'clock.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) mother 2) Salty

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) who 2) and 3) eaten
4) see 5) traveled 6) can't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) She has already fed the hens.
2) Where did you go yesterday, Hany?
3) We must wait for the rain?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A school trip)

Last week, I went to the museum with my friends. We went there by the school bus. We took photos of the objects there. We had nice time. We came back in the evening. We were very happy.

(4) محافظة القليوبية

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) park 2) salt water
3) protect 4) trip

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) healthy 2) exercise
3) wonders 4) road

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) bees 2) sweet 3) necessary

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Because it could be used for many things.
5) You can put honey on cuts.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) mother 2) soft

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) where 2) so 3) ever
4) to have 5) Although 6) tall

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) He is visiting his old friend.
2) It's important to have a healthy diet.
3) If you study hard, you'll succeed.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Cotton)

Cotton is a very important crop. Farmers grow it in the Nile Delta. People make clothes from it. The land in Egypt is good for growing cotton.

(5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) pilot 2) gravity
3) stars 4) plants

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) change 2) into
3) solid 4) liquid

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) should 2) safe 3) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

4) To walk, relax and breathe fresh air.
5) Flowers, trees and grass.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) salty 2) hot

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) and 2) where 3) beats
4) is 5) because 6) could

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) A chair is made of wood.
2) Emad visited his uncle.
3) Why is the sun important?

Model Answers

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(My favorite job)

I'd like to be an engineer. So I need to study hard. When I become an engineer, I will wear a helmet to protect my head. I'll help to build bridges and roads.

(6) إدارة الغردقة

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) family 2) Red Sea
3) cool 4) swimming

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) go 2) Luxor
3) saw 4) interesting

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) cousin 2) art 3) eleven

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He likes painting. 5) Adel and Ali.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) fast 2) salty

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) made 2) who 3) beautiful
4) visit 5) can't 6) but

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) I didn't meet my friend yesterday.
2) Mangrove trees grow in salt water.
3) Have you ever traveled to Cairo?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

Health is very important. So I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health. I should do exercise every week. I should drink a lot of water too.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) environment 2) marine
3) roots 4) home

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) astronaut 2) planets 3) problems 4) float

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) playing video games 2) schools 3) slow

B) Answer the following questions.

1) Football. 2) His fans.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) animals 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) can 2) was 3) can't
4) who 5) liked 6) wouldn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The parts of the forest interact with the ecosystem.
2) How often does your heart beat?
3) Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Rain)

Rain is very important for living things. It's important for plants too. When rain falls, we can grow plants. We need rain as humans for drinking and washing. Animals need water, too. All living-things need water.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) plants 2) arteries
3) veins 4) carbon dioxide

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) mountains 2) found 3) home 4) dinosaur

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) honey 2) old 3) bees

B) Answer the following questions.

4) The ancient Egyptians.
5) For making baskets and sandals.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) brave 2) steep

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) who 2) been 3) met
4) can 5) which 6) went

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The Ngorongoro Crater is 260 square kilometers.
2) What lives in mangeove forests?
3) Has Mr Kamal traveled to the USA?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(An ecosystem)

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. It can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things. The different species in an ecosystem makes a community and they all need each other to survive.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) three 2) Africa

3) difficult 4) ice

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) been 2) Have

3) haven't 4) Which

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Last year 2) Neva 3) trip

B) Answer the following questions.

4) It is in St Petersburg in Russia.

5) Because he had to walk a lot.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) salty 2) mangrove

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) ever 2) but 3) have

4) where 5) won't 6) will call

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What can we do with natural resources?

2) They don't look like normal shoes.

3) There isn't any coffee in the cupboard.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural Wonders)

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. Mount kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. It is the tallest mountain in Africa. People like to climb it.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) friend 2) sad

3) trees 4) food

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) bees 2) Honey 3) because 4) sweet

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) astronaut 2) gravity 3) sink

B) Answer the following questions.

4) To understand our own planet and they help us solve some of Earth's problems.

5) Because they live there without gravity.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) hot days 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) never 2) will 3) and

4) went 5) went 6) who

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What would happen if there was no gravity?

2) I like visiting the park.

3) How will you help the environment?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(What do you want to be?)

I want to be an astronaut. It is important to study other planets. I'm interested in stars. I like to work in a space station. If we live without gravity, we will float all the time.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) bees 2) expensive

3) natural 4) sweet

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) been 2) Why

3) train 4) family

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) city 2) restaurant 3) much

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Where the chances of work are found.

5) Many people

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) F 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) water 2) steep

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) and 2) traveled 3) studies

4) liked 5) doesn't 6) decided

Model Answers

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Have you traveled on a ship?

2) Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.

3) Storm chasers study extreme weather.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Resources in ancient Egypt)

The ancient Egyptians were successful because they had good natural resources. They used flax to make linen for clothes. They used papyrus to make paper. They used copper for making pots.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) salt
2) protect
3) carbon dioxide
4) flowers

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) went
2) How
3) friends
4) What

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) lovely
2) fine
3) season

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He went to Alexandria.

5) To hire a boat.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T
2) F
3) T
4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) plants
2) acacia

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) because
2) had
3) will
4) yet
5) isn't
6) wasn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) We met a man who works in a garden.

2) What do you think is a natural resource?

3) People came and cut down some trees.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The mangrove trees)

The mangrove trees are very important. They protect the marine ecosystem. The leaves of the mangrove trees are thick. Bees are buzzing there. They live in hives to make honey.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) ash
2) fertile
3) farmers
4) happy

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) fine
2) What
3) Do
4) stories

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) engineer
2) finish
3) English

B) Answer the following questions.

4) When he was 13.

5) Science and math.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T
2) F
3) T
4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) mountain
2) ibex

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) traveled
2) aren't
3) would
4) who
5) where
6) have bought

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Have you ridden a bike before?

2) People used mud to build houses.

3) Life is going to be better here.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Sunlight)

Humans need sunlight. We can't make our own foods without sunlight. We get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy.

Exam (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) summer
2) Marsa Alam
3) car
4) mine

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Archaeologists
2) natural
3) world
4) volcano

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) eat
2) small
3) tables

B) Answer the following questions.

4) He is a carpenter.

5) He gets up at six o'clock.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A picnic)

Yesterday I went on a picnic. I went with my family. It was fun. I played football. I was very happy. I had a nice time there. I enjoyed the picnic very much.

Exam (16)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) metal 2) easy
3) tools 4) museums

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) tennis 2) twice
3) healthy 4) What

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) useful 2) job 3) English

B) Answer the following questions.

4) It gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live.
5) All over the world.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

1) dugong 2) hooves

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) where 2) will push 3) sold
4) bought 5) can 6) so

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Have you visited the desert?
2) We get vitamin D from sunlight.
3) It's important to eat healthy food.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Healthy Diet)

A healthy diet is important for everyone. You shouldn't have a lot of sugar. You should eat fruits and vegetables to get vitamins. Carbohydrates give us energy. Eating the right food is good for us.